





Class E119

Book E13





A

# HISTORY

OF THE

# STATE OF NEW YORK,

FROM THE

FIRST DISCOVERY OF THE COUNTRY

TO THE

PRESENT TIME.

---

BY F. S. EASTMAN.

---

DESIGNED FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND FOR FAMILIES.

1828

NEW YORK,

PUBLISHED BY E. BLISS.

SOLD BY HIM, AND COLLINS AND CO., WHITE, GALLAHER AND  
WHITE, COLLINS AND HANNAY, NEW YORK; W. C. LITTLE,  
ALBANY; HASTINGS AND TRACY, AND WILLIAM WIL-  
LIAMS, UTICA; BEMIS AND WARD, CANANDAIGUA;  
E. PECK AND CO. ROCHESTER; AND DAY, FOLLET  
AND HASKINS, BUFFALO.

1828.

BENJAMIN MYLNE.

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK, ss.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the twentieth day of October, A. D. 1828, in the fiftythird year of the Independence of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, *James Conner*, of the said District, has deposited in this office the title of a book, the right whereof he claims as proprietor, in the words following, *to wit* :

"A History of the State of New York, from the first discovery of the country to the present time."

In conformity to the act of the Congress of the United States, entitled "An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned;" and also to an act, entitled, "An act supplementary to an act, entitled an act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving and etching historical and other prints."

FRED. J. BETTS, } Clerk of the Southern  
} District of New York.

F 119  
212

# CONTENTS.

---

## PREFACE,

vii

## CHAP. I.

### NATURAL GEOGRAPHY.

Boundaries. Situation and Extent. Climate. Face of the Country.	
Mountains. Soil and Productions. Rivers. Lakes. Islands, . . . . .	1

## CHAP. II.

### NATURAL GEOGRAPHY—CONTINUED.

Mineralogy. Salt Springs. Medicinal Waters. Botany. Natural Curiosities, . . . . .	10
--	----

## CHAP. III.

### NATURAL GEOGRAPHY—CONTINUED.

#### *Native Animals.*

Mastodon. Moose. Bear. Wolf. Cougar. Wolverene. Cata-mount. Wildcat. Raccoon. Martin. Deer. Fox. Hare. Rabbit. Porcupine. Woodchuck. Skunk. Weasel. Squirrel. Mouse. Ermine. Beaver. Musk-Rat. Mink. Otter. Fish. Birds. Insects. Serpents, and Reptiles, . . . . .	19
---	----

## CHAP. IV.

### VIEW OF THE COUNTRY AT THE TIME OF ITS DISCOVERY BY HUDSON.

State of the country. Aborigines. Iroquois. Their Confederacy. Antiquities. Inference. Their authors, and origin of the Indian race, . . . . .	30
--	----

## CHAP. V.

## DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

- Discoveries of Columbus and the Cabots. Great River discovered by Hudson. Hudson detained in England. Dutch trade to the Great River. Licensed Trading Company. First Settlement. West India Company. New Netherland. First Governor. Van Twiller's Administration. Kieft Stuyvesant. New Netherland surrendered to the English, . . . . . 41

## CHAP. VI.

## FROM 1665 TO 1710.

- Administration of Nichols. Lovelace. New York retaken by the Dutch, and soon after restored to the English. Andros. Dongan. Revolution. Leisler. Sloughter. Bellomont. War with the French, &c. . . . . 53

## CHAP. VII.

## FROM 1710 TO 1743.

- Hunter's administration. Expedition against Canada. Administration of Burnet, Montgomery, Crosby, and Clarke, . . . . 64

## CHAP. VIII.

## FROM 1743 TO 1760.

- George Clinton appointed Governor. War with France. Expedition against Louisburg. Incursions of the French and Indians. Operations of the war in 1746. Capture of the French fleet. Indian depredations. Termination of the war. Osborne appointed Governor, dies, and is succeeded by Delancey. Hostilities again commenced with the French. Colonial Convention. Hardy appointed Governor. Colonies prosecute the war, . . . . 77

## CHAP. IX.

## CONTINUATION OF THE FRENCH WAR.

- Formal declaration of war. Campaign of 1756, and capture of Oswego. Campaign of 1757, and capture of Fort William Henry. Expedition against Ticonderoga. Capture of Fort Frontenac. Campaign of 1759. Surrender of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

Capture of Niagara. Wolfe's expedition against Quebec. War terminated in 1760 by the entire conquest of Canada, . . . . 91

## CHAP. X.

## FROM 1760 TO 1775.

Prospects of the Colony. Controversy relative to the New Hampshire Grants. Opposition from the settlers. Stamp Act. Congress at New York. Disturbances occasioned by the Stamp Act. Stamp Act repealed. Assembly restrained. Further attempts to tax the Colonies. Controversy with the Grants becomes serious. Parties prevented from proceeding to hostilities by the controversy with Great Britain, . . . . . 103

## CHAP. XI.

## COMMENCEMENT OF THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

Origin of the controversy with Great Britain. State of affairs in the colony. Convention appoint delegates to the Provincial Congress. War breaks out at Lexington. Disturbances in New York. Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. Gov. Tryon arrives. Expedition against Canada. Surrender of Chamby, St Johns and Montreal. Montgomery appears before Quebec. His death. Inhabitants of Tryon county disarmed. Provincial troops enter New York. Americans evacuate Canada. Declaration of Independence, . . . . . 114

## CHAP. XII.

## THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR. FROM 1776 TO 1778.

Disposition of British and American troops at New York. Battle on Long Island. Americans evacuate New York. Americans continue to retreat. Fort Washington taken by the British. Operations on Lake Champlain. Convention adopt the State Constitution. Commencement of the northern campaign in 1777. Invasion of Burgoyne. His capture. Enterprise of Clinton. State Government organized, . . . . . 126

## CHAP. XIII.

## REVOLUTIONARY WAR, CONTINUED TO ITS TERMINATION.

Legislative proceedings. Revival of Controversy relative to the Grants. Treaty of Alliance with France. British army concen-

trated at New York. French fleet arrives. Campaign of '79. Operations at Stoney Point and Verplank's. Expedition against the Indians. Campaign of 1780. Depredations of the Royal Army. Arnold's Treachery. Campaign of '81. Capture of Cornwallis. Independence acknowledged, . . . .	141
--	-----

#### CHAP. XIV.

##### FROM 1783 TO 1812.

Condition of the country at the close of the war. Organization of the General Government. Internal concerns of the State. Settlement of the Vermont controversy. Agriculture, Arts, Manufactures, and Commerce. Civil Policy. Attention of the Legislature directed to the subject of Internal Navigation, . . .	163
--	-----

#### CHAP. XV.

##### WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN.

War declared. Preparation for the invasion of Canada. Battle of Queenstown. Capture of York and Fort George: Operations on the Lakes. Battles of Bridgewater, Chippewa and Plattsburg. Termination of the war. Commencement and completion of the Northern and Erie Canals, . . . .	187
---	-----

#### GENERAL VIEWS.

Constitution and Laws. Political divisions. Cities and Villages. Agriculture, Manufactures, Commerce, Canals. Banks. Militia. Education. Literary Institutions. Religion. Population. Character, . . . . .	209
--	-----

#### BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES.

Sketches of the lives and characters of some distinguished men in the colony and state of New York, . . . . .	254
---	-----

List of the Governors and Lieutenant Governors of the Colony and State of New York, with the time of their appointments, . .	278
--	-----

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE present volume is offered to the citizens of New York as a humble contribution to the means of educating youth. It is the opinion of the Compiler that History may be most successfully taught, by beginning with details concerning the spot where the pupil lives.—The knowledge also of what belongs to the story of “our own, our native land,” is not only interesting, but in the highest degree useful and necessary.

So far as the Compiler of this volume is informed, there is no work on the History of New York, susceptible of introduction into schools, or capable of conveying, even to mature minds, an outline of the subject. An attempt therefore to supply what seems an obvious blank in the list of books for education, in this State, with whatever degree of success it may be executed, it is thought will be looked upon with favor.

In preparing the work, the Compiler could of course aim only to give an abstract of the subject; and his endeavor has been therefore merely to exhibit the principal events which belong to the History of the colony and State of

New York, in the most simple terms. He has adopted the plan of several popular historical works, in giving two sizes of type, the principal features being in large, and inferior details in smaller, type. He has also, to avoid swelling the size of the volume, inserted a few articles in a still smaller type.

It will be seen by the references, that the compiler has made free use of the works of various authors; he pretends to little originality and offers his production to the public in the sincere hope that it may prove useful.

It is perhaps proper to make one further remark. In a work of this nature, it seemed that the Compiler should not seek minutely to detail the policy or exhibit the springs and motives of government, but should in general restrict himself to a plain exhibition of facts and events. It would be in vain to make a pupil comprehend the tangled maze of *politics*, even if it could be developed within the limits necessarily assigned to the present volume. The intricacies of the machine of government form a study which belongs to riper years, and more mature minds, and is therefore left for some other historian.

It is probable that some inaccuracies may be noticed. If the work is well received, it will be the compiler's care to render future editions more worthy of public favor.

# HISTORY OF NEW YORK.

---

## CHAP. I.

### NATURAL GEOGRAPHY.

*Boundaries. Situation and Extent. Climate. Face of the Country. Mountains. Soil and Productions. Rivers. Lakes. Islands.*

SEC. I. *Boundaries.* New York is bounded by Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and Long Island Sound on the South. Connecticut, Massachusetts, Vermont, and Lake Champlain on the East. Lower Canada, the St. Lawrence, Lake Ontario, Niagara river, Lake Erie, and Pennsylvania on the North and West.

SEC. II. *Situation and Extent.* This state is situated between Lat.  $40^{\circ} 40'$  and  $45^{\circ}$  North, and between Long.  $73^{\circ}$  and  $79^{\circ} 55'$  West. The length of the state on the parallel of  $42^{\circ}$  is 340 miles, and the greatest breadth from north to south 304. It contains, exclusive of islands, about 45,000 square miles. It is one of the largest of the United States, and the only one, which extends from the Atlantic to the western Lakes.

- 
1. How is New York bounded?
  2. How is it situated? — What is its extent? — How many square miles does it contain? — What is its size compared with the other states?

SEC. III. *Climate.* New York, extending through more than four degrees of latitude, presents a considerable diversity of climate. It is cold in the north towards the St. Lawrence; but milder in the southeast, and in the country lying on the shore of Lake Ontario. The greatest range of the thermometer is from  $24^{\circ}$  below to  $95^{\circ}$  above the cipher of Fahrenheit.

The climate of the counties between Lake Ontario and Pennsylvania is much warmer, than that of those farther east in the same latitude. The earliest forest trees in this tract put forth their leaves about the first of May; and the oak and other late trees by the 20th.

The shallow ponds and brooks usually freeze in October, and snow commonly falls by the last of November, but seldom during the winter exceeds a foot in depth. Cattle are sometimes kept in pastures till January, and on the Genesee flats nearly the whole winter.

The fever and ague is the most common disease throughout the state. It prevails on the Hudson, lake Champlain, on the Mohawk and the St. Lawrence, on the Chenango and the Oswego, on the Genesee and the Niagara. This disease is however becoming less frequent, than formerly, and in many places, where but a few years since, its prevalence was severely felt, it now very seldom occurs.

The country, between Pennsylvania and lake Ontario, is the most unhealthy part of the state. Malignant bilious fevers are common, and prove extremely prejudicial to strangers. This is particularly true on the banks of the Genesee, and on the low lands in the vicinity of the lakes. They sometimes occur between the Champlain and the St. Lawrence.

---

III. What is said of the climate?—*Of the counties between Lake Ontario and Pennsylvania?*—What is the most common disease? Where does it prevail?—What is said of this disease?—What is the most unhealthy part of the state?—What fevers are common?—In what other parts do they occur?

SEC. IV. *Face of the Country.* The face of the country exhibits an interesting variety, but is less mountainous, than many other parts of America. The Catskill Mountains in the eastern part of the state are the principal range. The western part generally presents a level, or moderately undulating surface.

The southeastern part of the state particularly between the Hudson and Chenango, may be characterized as mountainous. A narrow tract near the Pennsylvania line is generally hilly. From this to lake Ontario the country is mostly level, and contains no elevation deserving the name of a mountain.

The northwestern part of the state, between lakes Erie and Ontario, presents a remarkable singularity of surface. Lake Erie is more than 300 feet above lake Ontario, and the country around proportionably higher. The descent towards lake Ontario is not irregular and imperceptible; but is made by three successive pitches, or steeps, with a wide interval of level land between them.

The upper, or southern pitch commences at Buffalo, at the mouth of lake Erie, and runs north of east stretching round the mouth of Canandaigua lake to the west side of the Seneca, thence south to the high grounds of the Tioga.

The middle pitch commences at the Falls of Niagara, and, after an eastern course of about 50 miles, takes a southerly direction to the Genesee; thence north of the Seneca, Cayuga, Skeneateles, and Otisco lakes, and in an eastern direction to the hills, from whose southern declivities, flow the Chenango and Unadilla.

The northern, or lower pitch branches from the middle one near the Eighteen Mile Run, (a stream, which empties eighteen miles east of the Niagara,) and diverges

---

IV. What is said of the face of the country?—What is the principal range of mountains?—What is said of the western part of the state?—What part of the state is mountainous?—What part is hilly, and what level?—What singularity of surface in the northwestern part?—Describe the southern pitch.—The middle.—The northern.

ing northward, proceeds with a progress sometimes indistinct to the lower falls of the Genesee, thence eastward to the falls of the Oswego, 12 miles from its mouth.

The northeastern part of the state is generally hilly; and the height of land between Champlain, and the St. Lawrence presents a range of mountains of considerable elevation. A tract about 30 miles wide on the banks of the St. Lawrence is uneven. At that distance it becomes rough and broken.

SEC. v. *Soil and Productions.* The soil of New York is generally fertile, and well adapted to the purposes of agriculture. The country between the Seneca and Cayuga lakes, the valley of the Chenango, the extensive flats of the Genesee, and the lands along Black river, in richness of soil are second, perhaps, to none in America.

West of the Genesee the soil is less uniformly good. That near lake Ontario is the best. An extensive tract, in the eastern part of the state, including the counties of Rensselaer, Columbia, Green, Schoharie, Albany and Schenectady is but indifferent. The country along the Mohawk west of the Oneida village is very rich. The plains of Herkimer have long been justly celebrated for their fertility.

Wheat is the most important production, and is extensively cultivated throughout the state. It is raised on the flats of the Genesee with unparalleled facility, and in quality surpassed by none.

Many parts of the state are well adapted to grazing. Maize, rye, and barley are generally cultivated with suc-

---

*What is said of the northeastern part?*

v. *What is the character of the soil?—What parts remarkably fertile?—What is said of the soil west of the Genesee?—What part is best?—What part is mentioned as indifferent?—What is said of the country along the Mohawk?*

*What is the most important production?*

cess. In the counties southeast of the Chenango, the hills are covered with fine timber, and when cleared afford excellent pasture. The intervening valleys produce grass, and the various kinds of grain in abundance.

**SEC. VI. Rivers.** This state contains many noble streams, and is watered by some of the most celebrated rivers of America. On the western and northern boundaries are the Niagara and the St. Lawrence. The Allegany, Susquehannah, and Delaware rise in the south part of the state. The western part contains the Genesee, Oswego, and Black rivers; and the eastern part the Saranac, Hudson, and Mohawk.

The Niagara river is the outlet of lake Erie, and runs north about 30 miles to lake Ontario; embracing Grand and Navy islands, and receiving the Tonnewanta creek from the east. Three miles from lake Erie, it is 7 fur- longs in width, and its average depth 21 feet, with a current of 6 miles an hour.

Eighteen miles from lake Erie, are the celebrated *Falls of Niagara*. For a mile above the great pitch, the bed of the river sinks gradually 57 feet, causing grand and fearful rapids. It is then suddenly depressed, forming a precipice of about 160 feet from bank to bank. On the brink of the precipice is a small island,\* which divides the stream, and presents, for 150 yards, a perpendicular front of rock, fragments of which lie in confusion at its base.

*Table Rock* is on the Canada bank, and presents the most interesting view of this sublime spectacle. Looking up the river, you behold it tumbling with strange magnificence over the ledges of rocks, which from this point

\* *Goat Island*.

*What other productions are mentioned?*

**VI.** What is said of the rivers of this state?—What rivers on the northern and western boundaries?—What rise in the south part?—What are contained in the western part?—In the eastern?

*Describe the Niagara.*—Give some account of the Falls.

appear close together, and to constitute a single unbroken cataract. The immense mass of waters, greatly increased in rapidity by this descent, and still more by the contraction of the river, rolls with an almost instantaneous motion to the brow of the precipice, and shoots many yards beyond, as it falls over it into the abyss below.

If you then dare approach the verge of the rock and look down into this "*hell of waters*," you behold its billows of foam bounding in agony, and sending up columns of mist to the very clouds; while the depth of this tremendous chasm, the roar of the cataract, above all, the inconceivable exertion of power, overwhelm the mind with emotions of sublimity and grandeur.

The quantity of water passing the falls is estimated at 670,255 tons per minute, and the width of the stream, including the island, at 1410 yards. The channel on the American side of the island is the widest, and has the greatest perpendicular descent; though four fifths and perhaps a still larger proportion of the waters pass on the Canadian side.

The depth of the river beneath the fall is probably far greater, than its height; since the tallest trees descending perpendicularly are lost for several minutes beneath the water, before they reappear. The banks of the river below are on both sides perpendicular, of solid rock, and of the same height with the falls. They continue about the same height 7 miles to Queenstown.

The St. Lawrence is the outlet of lake Ontario, and for a considerable distance constitutes the northern boundary of New York. If considered as rising at the source of the St. Louis, it is 2000 miles in length, and in its quantity of water surpassed by no river in North America.

The Hudson rises in the northern part of the state, between lake Champlain and the St. Lawrence, and runs south 250 miles to the Atlantic. It is navigable for ships 130 miles to Hudson, and for sloops 36 miles further to Troy. The tide in this river flows 160 miles.

The Mohawk rises in the northern part of Oneida county 8 miles from Black river. Its course is south of

east 150 miles to the Hudson. It runs in a deep ravine, and is wild and impetuous. There is generally along its banks a vale of rich soil, but in many places, spurs from the neighboring hills project themselves to the shore of the river.

The chief tributaries of the Mohawk from the north are Great and Little Canada creeks. The former empties at Herkimer, and the latter 13 miles below. They run in deep ravines, are long, rapid and unnavigable. On the south, the Schoharie descending from the Catskill mountains rolls northward with the impetuosity of a torrent, and joins the Mohawk at Fort Hunter.

The Genesee rises in Pennsylvania, and pursues a northerly course of 120 miles to lake Ontario. It has several interesting cataracts. At Rochester is a perpendicular descent of 96 feet. In spring this river is a torrent; in autumn, it is nearly dry.

The Oswego is formed by the union of the Oneida and Seneca rivers, and runs northwest 45 miles to lake Ontario. Through the Oneida river, it receives the waters of the lake of that name, and through the Seneca river the waters of the Seneca, Cayuga, Owasco, Skeneateles, and Otisco lakes. The courses of these branches are very irregular.

Black river rises near the source of Great Canada creek, and after an irregular course of more than 100 miles, falls into lake Ontario. The Oswegatchie, Racket, and several other considerable rivers fall into the St. Lawrence.

Big Chazy, Saranac, and Sable rivers fall into lake Champlain. The Chenango and Tioga are branches of the Susquehannah. Cataraugus and Buffalo creeks are considerable streams falling into lake Erie. The Tonawanta after a course of 40 miles falls into the Niagara. It is navigable for boats 28 miles.

SEC. VII. *Lakes.* Erie, Ontario, and Champlain, each form a part of the boundary of New York. In the interior are several lakes

---

*Describe the Genesee.—The Oswego.—Black river.—What others are mentioned?*

vii. What Lakes form a part of the boundary of New York?—What in the interior?

inferior in size, but generally adapted to the purposes of internal navigation. Oneida, Seneca, and Cayuga are among the most important.

Lake Erie is 200 miles long, and 710 in circumference. It contains a large number of islands, and abounds with fish. It is of more dangerous navigation than the others on account of the rocks, which project into the water for many miles together, from the northern shore, affording no shelter from storms, which, at some seasons, are very frequent.

Lake Ontario is of an oval form about 160 miles in length, and 450 in circumference. Its banks are in many places precipitous. The southern shore is covered principally with beech trees, and the soil appears fertile. This lake abounds with several varieties of fish. Lake Champlain is 100 miles in length, and from 1 to 25 in breadth.

Lake George is 37 miles long, and from 1 to 7 broad. On each side it is skirted by lofty mountains. Its banks are uncommonly handsome, and the water so transparent, that the bottom is visible at almost any depth. It embosoms more than 200 beautiful islands, most of which are covered with groves of pine, cedar, and hemlock. It falls into lake Champlain by a channel 3 miles in length, during which its waters descend more than 100 feet.

Oneida lake is 20 miles long, and 5 broad. From the south it receives the waters of Cazenovia lake through the Chitteningo.

Seneca lake is 40 miles long, and from 2 to 3 wide. Its outlet, the Syracuse runs north of east 12 miles, and falls into Cayuga lake near its mouth. Crooked lake is 15 miles long, and from 1 to 2 wide. A short stream connects it with the Seneca.

Cayuga lake is 40 miles long, and from 2 to 4 broad. Onondaga, or salt lake, is 6 miles long, and 1 broad. On the southwest it receives the waters of the Otisco by a stream 16 miles long, and at the north end flows through a short channel into Seneca river. Skeneateles lake, 14 miles

---

Mention the most important lakes.

Describe Lake Erie.—Ontario—George—Oneida—  
Seneca—Cayuga.

long and 1 broad, and the Owasco, 11 miles long and 1 broad, are also discharged into Seneca river.

Canandaigua lake is 15 miles long, and nearly 2 broad. Chatauque lake lies 9 miles from lake Erie, and is 18 miles long and 3 broad. Its waters flow from Conewanago creek into the Allegany river. Boats go from the head of this lake to New Orleans.

Otsego and Caniaderago lakes are the two sources of the Susquehannah. The first is 9 miles long and 1 wide. The other is nearly as large. Oswegatchie lake is 18 miles long and nearly parallel with the St. Lawrence.

SEC. VIII. *Islands.* The principal islands are *Long Island* east of the city of New York, *Staten Island* west of New York bay; *Manhattan* or *York Island* on which the city of New York stands, and *Grand Island* in the Niagara river.

*Long Island* is about 140 miles long, and on an average about 10 broad. It is separated from Connecticut by the Sound, from York island by East river, and from Staten island by the Narrows. A ridge of hills extends through the north side, but the island is generally level. The soil is poor, and in many places not worth cultivating.

*Manhattan* is 15 miles long, and from 1 to 2 in width. It is separated from the Jersey shore by Hudson's, and from Long Island by East river.

*Staten Island*, 9 miles south of Manhattan, is 18 miles long, and from 6 to 7 broad. It is generally rough and hilly. On the south side is a considerable tract, which is level, and tolerably fertile.

*Grand Island* is 6 miles long and 3 broad. It has a good soil. The south end is 4 miles from Buffalo.

---

*Describe Canandaigua Lake.*—*What others are mentioned?*

*viii. What are the principal Islands belonging to this state?*

*Describe Long Island*—*Manhattan*—*What others are mentioned?*

## CHAP. II.

## NATURAL GEOGRAPHY—CONTINUED.

*Mineralogy.* *Salt Springs.* *Medicinal Waters.*  
*Botany.* *Natural Curiosities.*

SEC. I. *Mineralogy.* The mineral resources of the state have, as yet, been very imperfectly investigated, and many parts of this extensive country remain totally unexplored. Wherever inquiries have been made, they have generally resulted in the most brilliant success.

Of *Iron* there is an inexhaustible quantity in the highlands, and in different parts of the state, as far as Indian River, or west branch of the Oswegatchie. The ore on the borders of lake Champlain, and in the highlands gives a metal of a very superior quality.

*Marble* of great value, on account of its quality and colour, abounds in the counties of Ulster, Dutchess, and Washington. A vein of a dove colour, full of scallops, or *pectivites*, has been discovered in the vicinity of Ontario in Jefferson county. Black marble, with white spots, is found at Marbletown in Ulster county, at Granville in Washington county, and at Ticonderoga.

*Limestone* abounds in various places. *Magnesian limestone* is found near the city of New York. *Fetid carbonate of lime* in Dutchess county; also, near Ticonderoga, and the Falls of Niagara.

*Clay* is widely diffused throughout the state, and exists in a considerable number of varieties. Fine white *Pipe Clay* is found on Black River. *Gypsum*, (sulphate of lime,) abounds in the western country, and a large vein

---

1. What is said of the mineral resources of this state?—What has been the result of inquiries?

*What is said of Iron?*—*Of Marble?*—*Mention the most important locations.*—*What is said of Lime?*—*Of Clay?*—*Of Gypsum?*

has been opened in the eastern, a mile above the town of Hudson, and near the river of the same name. That of Onondaga is very pure.

*Native Silver* has been found near Sing Sing, in a small vein. Ores of *Tin* have been discovered in the highlands, and in the counties of Essex and Clinton. Ores of *Arsenic* are found in Orange county, in the town of Warwick. *Gemet*, of a rose colour, exists near Fishkill.

*Flint* imbedded in limestone is found at Black Rock, in the Seneca prairies, and near Saratoga Springs. *Quartz*, of which the Esopus millstone is made, is found in the counties of Ulster and Orange. *Argillaceous Slate* is found in Dutchess and Ulster counties. *Coal* exists near the banks of the Hudson, in the town of New Marlborough.

*Lead* is found in the highlands, Columbia, Essex, Clinton, Herkimer, Ulster, and several other counties. *Black Lead*, or *Plumbago*, exists near the city of New York, and in the highlands 60 miles north; also, in the counties of Ulster and Jefferson, and near Lake Champlain. *Emery* is found in the vicinity of Lake George.

Native *Allum* occurs in several caverns, in which also are found beautiful samples of *Calcareous*, and *Silicious Spar*. *Asbestos* is found in Dutchess and Rensselaer counties. A considerable variety of *Ochres*, or *Pigments* are found in different parts of the state. *Mica* occurs in numerous varieties. *Serpentine* is found in New Lebanon. *Rock Crystal* is abundant. Beds of *Silicious Sand* have been discovered affording, for the purposes of manufacture, an inexhaustible supply.

SEC. II. *Salt Springs*. The *Salt Springs* occupy a conspicuous place among the mineral resources of this state, and furnish inexhaustible mines of great value. The most important

---

Where has *Silver* been found? — Ores of *Tin*? — Of *Arsenic*? — *Gemet*, where found? — *Flint*? — *Quartz*? — *Argillaceous Slate*? — *Coal*? — *Lead*? — *Black Lead*? — *Emery*? — *Allum*? — What other minerals are mentioned?

II. What is said of the *Salt Springs*?

are found in the counties of Onondaga, Cayuga, Seneca, Ontario, and Genesee.

The Onondaga salt springs rise in a marsh at the head of the Onondaga, or Salt Lake. The water is remarkably impregnated with salt. Fifty gallons yield, by boiling, a bushel of salt, weighing fiftysix pounds. It contains a considerable quantity of lime. In addition to salt, the water contains carbonic acid gas, and a small quantity of sulphuric acid.

The springs most highly impregnated issue from the marsh in a group, at the foot of the declivity on which is built the village of Salina. There are many other salt springs in different parts of the marsh; some along the shores of the lake several miles farther down; and others at a considerable distance up the creek. All of these are not, however, equally impregnated with this mineral.

SEC. III. *Medicinal Waters.* New York has long been celebrated for the superior richness and variety of its medicinal waters. Those of Saratoga are perhaps unequalled by any in the world. Of *Sulphur Springs* there is an almost infinite diversity, from those of Clifton, to the small sulphuretted hydrogen springs everywhere diffused over the regions of clay, shistus, and limestone. *Bituminous Springs* occur in Cattaraugus and Allegany counties.

The Saratoga Springs rise out of a shallow vale, or marsh, by the side of a branch of the Kayadarossoras creek. The Congress, High Rock, Columbian, Red, Flat Rock, Washington, Hamilton, and President Springs are the most celebrated.

---

Where are the most important?

*Describe the Onondaga Salt Springs.*

IV. What is said of the Medicinal Waters of this state?—Mention the most important.

*Where do the Saratoga Springs rise?—Which are the most celebrated?—Describe the Congress Spring.*

*Congress Spring*\* in its medicinal effect, is the most important. The gas escaping through the water in fine bubbles gives to the surface the appearance of simmering. When first dipped, the water is remarkably limpid, but after standing a few hours exposed to the air, it becomes turbid, and deposits a sediment. Its most obvious effect, when taken as a medicine, is that of a cathartic and diuretic.

*High Rock Spring* is enclosed in a hollow rock of a conical form, that rises about five feet, the base of which is about nine feet in diameter. At the top is a circular opening of near ten inches in diameter, which enlarges downward. The water rises within two feet of the top, and is kept in a state of constant ebullition by the escape of carbonic acid gas, of which this spring contains a larger proportion, than any of the others.

This rock seems to have been formed by concretion, from the particles thrown up by the waters, and is of a spongy texture, soft and easily broken, though the surface is more compact and hard, of a color approaching to the brown oxyd of iron in a natural state. There is a crack on one side, which is supposed to open a vent for the water below the surface of the earth; and tradition asserts, with every appearance of probability, that, when the spring was first discovered, the water flowed over the top of the rock.

These waters contain muriates of soda and lime, carbonates of lime, magnesia, soda and iron, with large quantities of carbonic acid gas. They are useful in cases of dyspepsia, cabulous complaints, cutaneous eruptions, and

\* One gallon of the water of Congress spring gives on analysis the following result.

Muriate of Soda, - - - - -	471,5
Carbonate of Lime, - - - - -	178,476
Carbonate of Soda, - - - - -	16,5
Carbonate of Magnesia, - - - - -	3,356
Carbonate of Iron, - - - - -	6,168

Total 676, Grains.

Carbonic acid gas—343, cubic inches.

*Describe the Congress Spring.—The High Rock Spring.*

scrofula. They are widely diffused over Saratoga county. Those of Ballston\* have long been in high repute, and are much frequented.

The *Clifton Springs* are in Farmington, twelve miles from Geneva. The principal issues are 3 large springs. The rocks around them are calcareous, filled with impressions generally imputed to petrifaction of testaceous shells. Where one of them rises, is a spot 5 or 6 rods in diameter completely covered with mineral precipitates, principally sulphur, which is found to be in some places near 6 feet deep.

These waters are strongly impregnated with sulphur. When first dipped, they are perfectly transparent, but become opaque by standing, and assume a yellowish cream color, as the precipitates form. These consist of sulphur, and carbonate of lime. In this state, they emit great quantities of sulphuretted hydrogen gas, which diffuses a scent to a very considerable distance.

*Chappequa* spring is a chalybeate, at Mount Pleasant 3 miles from Hudson's river, and 30 from New York. On a mountain near Newbury, there is a mineral spring, whose waters create sickness, and nausea. It is said to contain copper; and around it a flame has been seen, as if issuing from the earth. The *Seneca Oil*, from Cataraugus and Allegany counties, is a petroleum very nearly resembling the *British Oil* of commerce. There are warm springs at New Lebanon in Columbia county, and near Flushing in Long Island.

\*One gallon of the water from the principal fountain at Ballston Spa, gives—

Muriate of Soda,	-	-	-	-	-	159,
Carbonate of Soda,	-	-	-	-	-	9,
Carbonate of Lime,	-	-	-	-	-	75,5
Carbonate of Magnesia,	-	-	-	-	-	2,5
Carbonate of Iron,	-	-	-	-	-	7,

253, grains.

Carbonic acid gas—210 cubic inches.

What do these waters contain?—What is said of the *Clifton Springs*?—With what are these waters impregnated?—What is said of the *Chappequa Spring*?—Of the *Seneca Oil*?—What other springs are mentioned?

SEC. IV. *Botany.* The common forest trees are the varieties of oak, ash, walnut, pine, maple, beech, chesnut, birch, poplar, cherry, cedar, elm, hemlock, sumach, &c. Of shrubs and plants, the most noted are wild hops, fox grapes, ginseng, sarsaparilla, snake-root, spikenard, mandrake, wild gooseberry, and cranberry.

The greatest proportion of timber in the western country consists of oak, elm, maple, walnut, beech, butternut, chesnut, cucumber. The indigenous plum tree yields a fruit of an agreeable flavor, which ripens late in autumn. Four varieties of wild grape grow throughout the whole territory.

In the northwestern parts, near the river St. Lawrence and lake Ontario, black and white oak abounds interspersed with pine and hickory. The natural growth consists of maple, beech, elm, basswood, and birch. There are numerous tracts covered with pine.

SEC. V. *Natural Curiosities.* The country contains many of those uncommon views, which have been classed under this head. Its noble cataracts, the gloomy recesses of its caverns, the romantic defiles of its mountains and highlands, present many striking and highly interesting scenes.

The falls of Niagara, and the Genesee, have been previously mentioned. *Glenn's Falls*, on the Hudson, near Kingsbury, are highly picturesque and magnificent. A solid bed of limestone extends across the channel, forming, as the bed of the river sinks down, an irregular precipice. From this, the whole waters of the Hudson descend in broken torrents.

---

IV. What are most common forest trees?—Shrubs and plants?

What is said of the timber in the western part?—In the northwestern part?

V. What is said of the curiosities of the country?

The masses of rock which direct the courses of the waters, and separate their currents, are disposed in horizontal strata. In several places, they are very abrupt, and terminate in a perpendicular wall. Between them are profound openings, through which, the torrent forces its way. At the bottom all the streams unite, and proceed in conjunction towards Fort Edward.

The *Cahoes*, or *Great Falls* of the Mohawk, are not unworthy of notice. The river pours over a rock, which extends 900 yards, nearly across the channel, and about 30 feet in height. These falls are about 3 miles from its junction with the Hudson.

There is a singular cave at Rhinebeck, in Dutchess county. The entrance, between two large rocks on the declivity of a steep hill, is a short and small horizontal passage, to a narrow perpendicular passage, about 10 feet long, from 8 to 10 broad, and 4 high.

A narrow passage conducts from this to a second room, 13 feet long, but higher, and broader, than the first. Numerous calcareous stalactites depend from the roof of this room, and some stalagmites rise from the floor. These have met in various places, and formed solid columns, some of them more than two feet in circumference.

In Ulster county, is a cavern of greater dimensions than any other yet explored in this country. Its length is estimated at three quarters of a mile, and its breadth varies from twenty to forty feet. It is at least twenty feet in height. A stream, which issues from the mountain to the northwest, turns two mills, before it runs through it. It emerges about a quarter of a mile from the Roudout creek, and falls into it.

The passage into the cavern is a considerable distance from its western extremity. It is very narrow, and so precipitous, as to occasion some difficulty in descending. It is evident from the form of the blocks of stone, which lie under the opening, that it has been made by the splitting of the rock from the expansion of ice in its cavities.

---

*What falls are mentioned on the Hudson?—Describe them.*

*What on the Mohawk?—Describe them.—Describe the cavern in Dutchess county.—In Ulster county.*

On the sides and roof of the cavern, which are composed of dark colored limestone, are seen impressions of shells, calcareous spar, and beautiful white and yellow stalactites, of different size and shape; some of which have the appearance of a honeycomb. A few rods from the opening on the west side, the cavern divides itself into two vaults of nearly equal dimensions. Near the eastern extremity, there is a fall of water of unknown depth, beyond which no person has yet ventured.

In the southeast part of Lake Erie, about 20 rods from the shore, is a curious spring, which boils up from the bottom of the lake. The water is here 4 and a half feet deep. The water of the spring rises with some force through that of the lake, and may be collected. It takes fire, when a brand is thrust into it, and, when drank, proves a powerful emetic.

In Chester, Warren county, is a natural bridge, which gives the name of *Stone Bridge Creek* to a small stream that runs under it. This stream rises in Essex county, and enters Chester about 30 rods above the bridge, and immediately falls over a rocky precipice into a large natural basin; whence turning easterly, it enters the subterranean passage in two branches.

The northern branch enters its passage under an arch of granite 40 feet high, and about 80 feet broad at the base, gradually diminishing in capacity as you descend. A person may follow the stream with ease, 156 feet from the entrance, where it becomes so much contracted, as to prevent any further progress.

At a short distance, the southern and principal branch enters its passage amidst a heap of stones and rubbish that almost conceals the entrance, and, with difficulty, its passage has been explored. It is in some places much confined, and in others, opens into caverns of 30 or 40 feet diameter, and filled with water to a great depth. At the distance of 247 feet from the entrance, the waters disembooke in one stream, having united in the subterranean passage, and here a precipice of rock 57 feet high termin-

---

*What is said of the spring in Lake Erie?—What natural bridge is mentioned?—Describe it.*

ates the bridge. The arch through which the water is discharged is about 10 feet wide, and 5 in height.

In Willsborough, on Lake Champlain, is a remarkable "Split Rock." The whole coast of the lake, for a number of miles, is formed by rude and rocky mountains, which seem to hang over the water, and threaten the passing sailor. From one extremity of these cliffs, a rocky promontory projected about 50 yards into the lake.

By some violent convulsion of nature, it has been broken off, and removed from the main rock about 20 feet. The opposite sides exactly fit each other, the prominences of each corresponding perfectly with the cavities of the other. The point broken off contains about half an acre, and is covered with wood. The height of the rock above the water, on each side of the fissure, is about 12 feet.

Under the head of *Curiosities* may also be included those giant productions of our forests, for which some parts of our state have been so much celebrated. A black walnut tree, near the mouth of the creek to which it has given name, measures twentyseven feet in circumference. The trunk, to the height of seventy feet, is straight, destitute of limbs, and diminishes very little in diameter.

In Reading, is a white oak, which measures seventeen feet six inches in circumference, six feet from the ground. It is perfectly erect, and diminishes very little for fifty feet. In Mentz, there is a hollow buttonwood tree, which is thirtythree feet in circumference, three feet from the ground. Elder Smith preached to an audience of thirty-five persons in the cavity of this tree, and asserted, that it would have held fifteen more. Its diameter is seventeen feet. There is another in Oswego, which measures thirtyfive feet six inches in circumference, two feet from the ground; and is now in a growing and healthy condition.

---

*Describe the Split Rock.—What remarkable vegetable productions are mentioned?—Describe them.*

## CHAP. III.

## NATURAL GEOGRAPHY—CONTINUED.

## NATIVE ANIMALS.

*Mastodon. Moose. Bear. Wolf. Cougar.*  
*Wolverene. Catamount. Wildcat. Raccoon.*  
*Martin. Deer. Fox. Hare. Rabbit. Por-*  
*cupine. Woodchuck. Skunk. Weasel. Squir-*  
*rel. Mouse. Ermine. Beaver. Musk-Rat.*  
*Mink. Otter. Fish. Birds. Insects. Ser-*  
*pents, and Reptiles.*

SEC. I. The uncultivated state of the country, previous to its settlement by Europeans, was highly favorable to the increase of animals. The immense forests which extended over every part of the state, formed the residence of a great variety, and number of animals. In disposition, they were more mild and temperate, and in magnitude, strength, and vital energy, they were far superior\* to the same

\* The following table gives the weight of several kinds of animals in America and Europe :

	<i>In Europe.</i>				<i>In America.</i>	
The Bear	153	lb.	7	oz.	-	-
Wolf,	69	8	-	-	-	92
Deer,	288	8	-	-	-	308
Fox, red,	13	5	-	-	-	20
Porcupine,	2	2	-	-	-	16
Martin,	1	9	-	-	-	5 4 oz.
Beaver,	18	5	-	-	-	63 8
Otter,	8	9	-	-	-	29 8
Hare,	7	6	-	-	-	8
Rabbit,	3	4	-	-	-	7
Weasel,	2	2	-	-	-	12
Ermine,	2	8	-	-	-	14

1. To what was the state of the country, previous to its settlement, favorable?—How did the animals of this country compare with those of Europe?

kinds of animals in Europe. Fed by the luxuriant productions of a fertile soil, and unmolested, but by a few, and unarmed men, they increased, and multiplied with astonishing rapidity.

SEC. II. Of Quadrupeds, there were about forty kinds. Most of these have, at present, either entirely disappeared, or are found only in the northern, and more mountainous regions.

The principal quadrupeds were the mastodon, or mammoth, moose, bear, wolf, wolverene, cougar, catamount, raccoon, martin, deer, fox, hare, rabbit, porcupine, wood-chuck, skunk, weasel, ermine, squirrel, and mouse. The beaver, otter, musk-rat and mink are amphibious. Some of the most interesting of these will be described.

SEC. III. The *Mastodon*, or *Mammoth*, first excites our attention. This name has been applied to an animal, now extinct, the remains of which are found in the counties of Ulster, Orange, and Rockland in this state, and in various other parts of America. It in some respects resembled the elephant, but was of a distinct species from that animal, and of five or six times its magnitude. It has been supposed by some, from the form of the teeth, to be carnivorous, but from other indications, we are compelled to adopt the contrary opinion. An almost entire skeleton has been collected, which weighs about one thousand pounds.

The height of this skeleton, over the shoulders, is 11 feet, the hip 9. Length, from the chin to the rump 15

---

What is said of their increase?

II. How many kinds of Quadrupeds were there? — What is said of these at present.

Mention the principal Quadrupeds.

III. Give some account of the Mastodon? — Its magnitude.

feet ; from the point of the tusks to the end of the tail, following the exterior curve, 31 feet ; in a straight line 17 feet 6 inches. Length of the under jaw, 2 feet 10 inches. It weighs 63 1-2 lbs. The tusks are 10 feet 7 inches long, and a single tooth weighs 4 lb. 10 ounces.

“ The emotions experienced, when for the first time, we behold the giant relics of this great animal, are those of unmixed awe. We cannot avoid reflecting on the time, when this huge frame was clothed with its peculiar integuments, and moved by appropriate muscles ; when the mighty heart dashed forth its torrents of blood through vessels of enormous caliber, and the mastodon strode along in supreme dominion over every tenant of the wilderness.”

“ However we examine what is left to us, we cannot help feeling, that this animal must have been endowed with a strength exceeding that of other quadrupeds, as much as it exceeded them in size ; and, looking at its ponderous jaws, armed with teeth peculiarly for the most effectual crushing of the firmest substances, we are assured, that its life could only be supported by the destruction of vast quantities of food.”

“ Enormous as were these creatures during life, and endowed with faculties proportioned to the bulk of their frames, the whole race has been extinct for ages. No tradition, nor human record has been saved, and, but for the accidental preservation of a comparatively few bones, we should never have dreamed that a creature of such vast size and strength once existed,—nor could we have believed that such a race had been extinguished forever.”

“ Such, however, is the fact—ages after ages have rolled away—empires and nations have arisen, flourished, and sunk into irretrievable oblivion, while the bones of the mastodon, which perished long before the periods of their origin, have been discovered, scarcely changed in color, and exhibiting all the marks of perfection and durability.\*

#### SEC. IV. The largest living animal found

\* *Godman.*

---

IV. What was the largest living animal ?

within the limits of the state was the *Moose*; They were of two kinds, and belong to the same species, with the elk. The black are said to have been from eight to twelve feet high.\* The grey are, generally as tall as a horse, and some much taller. Both have spreading palmated horns, which are shed annually, and weigh from thirty to forty pounds. The largest of these animals were estimated by the hunters to weigh from thirteen to fourteen hundred pounds. It has long ceased to be an inhabitant of our forests.

The head of the *Moose* is large, the neck short, with a thick, short and upright mane ; the eyes are small, the ears long, very broad, and thick ; the nostrils are large, the upper lip square, and hangs over the lower. The hoofs are cloven, his gait, a long shambling trot, and his course very swift and straight. The food of this animal is grass, shrubs, the boughs, and bark of trees. In summer they go in families, and in winter herd together in droves of from thirty to forty. Their defence is chiefly with their fore feet, with which, they strike with great force. The female is smaller than the male, and generally without horns.

SEC. v. The *Bear* was one of the most common animals, and always of a black color. It was carnivorous, but less fierce and sanguinary, than has been generally supposed. Its greatest weight is about four hundred and fifty pounds. It has disappeared in most parts of the state, but is occasionally found in the northern, and mountainous regions.

The bear has short legs, with thick clumsy body, is generally fat, and is very fond of vegetable food, such as sweet apples, corn, berries, grapes, &c. He frequently

\* *Morse.*

destroys the smaller domestic animals, and has been known to attack the human kind. When the first snow falls, he retreats to some hollow tree, or some natural cavern in the earth, and passes the winter in a torpid state.

SEC. vi. The *Wolf* was frequently met with, and also the most noxious of our native animals. The color of the wolf is a dirty grey, and in general form he resembles the dog, or is, perhaps more properly that animal in its natural state. It is carnivorous, extremely fierce and sanguinary. He is now found only in the northern, and unsettled parts of the state.

The wolf has a long head, pointed nose, sharp and erect ears, a short thick neck, with sharp and strong teeth. His eyes generally appear sparkling, and his countenance is expressive of great wildness and ferocity. He lives in a state of constant warfare with all other animals, and has, in some instances, ventured his attacks upon men. His greatest weight is about ninetytwo pounds.

The *Cougar* and *Wolverene* have entirely disappeared, or are very rarely met with. The cougar was about the size of the wolf, of a grey color, strong, active, fierce, and untameable.

SEC. vii. The *Catamount* was rarely met with, but, on account of its remarkable ferocity, was much dreaded by the hunters. In general form, it resembled the cat, but was larger than our largest dogs. It is carnivorous, and, from its sanguinary disposition, was esteemed the most dangerous of our animals. Its weight was estimated at about one hundred pounds. It has almost, if not entirely disappeared from our forests.

---

vi. What is said of the Wolf?—Of the Cougar and Wolverene?

vii. For what was the Catamount remarkable?

The length of the body, including the head, was about 7 feet ; the circumference of the body, 2 1-2 feet ; length of the tail, 3 feet, and of the legs, about 1 foot. The color, along his back, was nearly black ; on the sides, a dark, reddish brown ; his feet black. He was not calculated for running, but leaped with surprising agility.

The *Wildcat*, *Raccoon*, and *Martin*, now occur only in the most uncultivated parts of the state. The wildcat is, in many respects, similar to our common cats, but larger, and stronger. It is of the same disposition, and color, as the wolf.

SEC. VIII. The *Deer* is one of the most common, and valuable of our native animals. It is extremely active, possesses great mildness of disposition, and is easily domesticated. Its greatest weight is about three hundred pounds.

In the spring, it sheds its hair, and appears of a light red ; this color gradually becomes darker until autumn, when it becomes a pale brown. Its horns are slender, round, projecting forwards, and bent into a curve. The horns grow about two feet in length, are shed annually, and weigh from two, to four pounds.

There were several varieties of the *Fox*. This animal now occurs in various parts of the state, but its numbers are much diminished.

The *Hare*, *Rabbit*, *Porcupine*, and *Woodchuck*, are occasionally found in most parts of the state.

The porcupine weighs about sixteen pounds, and is distinguished for the quills, with which he is armed. These quills are about the size of those of the pigeon, and from two to four inches long. When attacked by an enemy, the porcupine places his head between his fore

---

Describe it.—What is said of the Wildcat, Raccoon and Martin?

VIII. The Deer?—Fox?—Hare, Rabit, Woodchuck, and Porcupine? For what is the Porcupine distinguished?

feet, and erects his quills around him in the form of a hemisphere.

The quills are so loosely inserted in his flesh, and of such a peculiar construction, that they are easily extracted, and like a barbed dart stick fast, and work themselves into the flesh of any animal, that touches their extremities; nor can they be easily withdrawn, without tearing the flesh, but by incision. The color of this animal is gray, and his motion extremely slow.

SEC. IX. The *Skunk* was common to all parts of the state, and still frequently occurs. It is remarkable for being furnished with organs for secreting, and retaining a fluid, volatile and fetid beyond any thing known. He has the power of emitting this to the distance of several paces, when necessary for his defence. When this ammunition is expended, he is quite harmless. This volatile scoter is a powerful antispasmodic.

This animal is about a foot and a half long, of a moderate height, and size in proportion to its length. His tail is long and bushy; his hair long and chiefly black, but on his head, neck, and back, are found spots of white without any regularity, or uniformity. His sight is imperfect during the day time, and he seeks his food, consisting mostly of beetles and other insects, in the evening, at which time, he often visits farm-houses, for the purpose of committing depredations upon poultry.

SEC. X. The *Weasel*, and numerous varieties of the *Squirrel*, and *Mouse*, are still common to most parts of the state. The *Ermine* is rarely found, and is one of the most beautiful inhabitants of the forest.

The ermine in form, dimensions, and activity, resem-

---

IX. What is said of the Skunk?

X. Of the Weasel, Squirrel, Mouse, and Ermine?—Describe the Ermine.

bles the weasel, but is rather larger. Its weight is about fourteen ounces, and its color, a beautiful white. The tail is tipped with black, and some have a stripe of dark brown, or mouse color, extending along the back from the head, to the tail. This beautiful animal has the most fine, and delicate fur, that can be imagined.

SEC. XI. The *Beaver* was formerly common, and its fur in the early period of our history formed an important article of trade. It is amphibious, but cannot live for any length of time under water; it can live without it, provided, it has the occasional convenience of bathing. The largest beavers, formerly found, were four feet in length, and weighed from fifty to sixty pounds. Those found in later years weigh from twentyfive to thirty pounds. This social, and industrious animal, has left many vestiges of its ingenuity and skill, though now principally driven from our territory.

"The head of this animal is large, and his ears short and round. Their fore teeth are prominent, long, broad, strong, and grooved or hollowed like a gouge. Their fore legs are short, with toes separate; their hinder legs are long with toes webbed. The tail is large, broad, and scaly, resembling the body of a fish. Their color is generally a dark brown, but varies, according to the climate they inhabit. Their hair is long and coarse; the fur very thick, fine, and highly valued. The castor used in medicine is found in sacs formed behind the kidneys."

"Their houses are always situated in the water; sometimes they make use of a natural pond, but generally they choose to form one by building a dam across some brook or rivulet."

"For this purpose they select a number of saplings, of soft wood, generally of less than 6 inches in diameter, but sometimes of 16 or 18 inches; these they fell, and divide

---

XI. What is said of the Beaver?—Give some account of the habitations of this animal, and its habits of life.

into proper lengths, and place them in the water, so that the length of the sticks make the width of the dam. These sticks they lay in mud or clay, their tails serving them for trowels, as their teeth did for axes. These dams are six or eight feet thick at bottom ; sloping on the side opposed to the stream ; and are about a quarter as broad at top, as at bottom. Near the top of the dam they leave one or more waste ways, or sliding places, to carry off the surplus water."

" The formation of their cabins is no less remarkable. They consist of two stories, one under, the other above water. They are shaped like the oval beehive ; and of a size proportioned to the number of inhabitants. The walls of the lower apartment are two or three feet thick, formed like their dams ; those of the upper story are thinner, and the whole on the inside plastered with mud. Each family constructs its own cabin. The upper apartments are curiously strewed with leaves, rendered neat, clean, and comfortable."

" The winter never surprises these animals before their business is completed ; for their houses are generally finished by the last of September, and their stock of provisions laid in, which consists of small pieces of wood deposited in the lower apartments. Before a storm, all hands are employed in repairing or strengthening their dams. They retain their industrious habit even after they are domesticated. In summer they roam abroad, and feed on leaves, twigs, and food of this kind. The beavers are considered as the same species, with those in Europe, but are in every respect vastly superior."\*

SEC. xii. The *Musk-Rat* is about 15 inches in length, and one foot in circumference. It is frequently found, is of a dark color, with short hair. It is furnished with glands, which secrete a substance, that has the smell of musk. In his manner of living he is a distant imitator of the beaver.

\* Morse.

---

What is said of the Musk-Rat ?

The *Mink* is about 16 inches long, and in general form resembles the weasel. It is of a dark color, and burrows in the vicinity of water. It is still found in most parts of the state.

The *Otter* very much resembles the mink in form and habits. Its color is not so dark, but its size is much greater. It is now seldom met with.

Neither of these animals, though classed as amphibious, can live any considerable length of time under water.

SEC. XIII. Of *Fish*, the waters of this state present a numerous list. They are however rapidly diminishing. The *Salmon* has long since ceased to visit the Hudson. Our western waters supply the salmon of the lakes in great abundance; while the northern abound with several varieties of *Trout*.

Shoals of *Shad* and *Herring* annually visit the Hudson, and the *Sturgeon* may be said to abound, and is nowhere better, than in this river. In the southern part of this state, the variety of fish is very great, having the stores of the Atlantic. No fish market in the world is better supplied, than that of New York. The *Oysters* have a high reputation.

Bass, pike, and a considerable variety of others visit Albany, but neither the Hudson or Mohawk can be called good for fish. The Oneida is the best fishing ground of any of our small western lakes. The muscanunge, black fish, the pike, or pickerel, of the western lakes are much esteemed. The cat fish makes excellent eating, when skilfully dressed.

---

What is said of the *Mink*?—*Otter*?

xiii. What is said of the *Fish*?—Mention the most important.

SEC. XIV. The number of *Birds*, that visit this widely extended, and diversified territory, or reside in it, is surprisingly great. Long Island alone presents a catalogue of more than one hundred and fifty species, besides many others, that remain there, but a small part of the season. The *Virginia Nightingale*, the most elegant songster of the American forest, with numerous other migratory birds spend the summer in our western regions.

Of *Insects*, there is a considerable number of varieties. During the warm season, the earth, and atmosphere teem with these specimens of animated nature. They are, however, for the most part, neither venomous, nor otherwise injurious.

Of *Serpents*, and *Reptiles*, the number is small. The *Rattlesnake* is the only one which is poisonous, and its numbers, never great, are rapidly diminishing. The *Black* snake, *Water* snakes, small *Striped* snake, and *Green* snake, with several others, perfectly inoffensive, are occasionally found.

---

xiv. What is said of Birds?—Of Insects?—Of Serpents, and Reptiles?

## CHAP. IV.

## VIEW OF THE COUNTRY

AT THE TIME OF ITS DISCOVERY BY HUDSON.

*State of the country. Aborigines. Iroquois. Their Confederacy. Antiquities. Inference. Their authors, and origin of the Indian race.*

SEC. I. At the period of Hudson's discovery, the country was mostly in an unimproved state. From its general appearance, and from the traditions of its inhabitants, we infer, that it had previously continued in this situation for a long succession of ages.

No traces of recent civilization enlivened the dreary waste. A few scattered villages comprising a limited number of habitations, of the most imperfect construction, and some feeble and ill directed attempts at agriculture announced the more frequented haunts of savage life; but by far the greater part of this extensive territory was covered by an unbroken wilderness.

The several varieties of game, and the spontaneous productions of the earth were everywhere numerous, and abundant. The luxuriance of vegetation evinced the fertility of a soil, which required only the hand of art to render it in the highest degree subservient to the wants of man. But the country was in-

---

1. What was the state of the country at the time of Hudson's discovery? — What is said of the spontaneous productions of the earth? — Of the fertility of the soil?

habited by a race averse to improvement, rude and uncultivated, as the scenery around them. Over this wide spread profusion of nature's gifts, the *Savage* held uncontrolled dominion, and found in the deep recesses of the forest a safe and welcome retreat.

SEC. II. The original inhabitants of this state were *Indians*. The *Iroquois*,\* and the *Delawares*, a tribe of the *Mohekaneews*, were in possession at the time of Hudson's discovery. They belong to the great family, which has been denominated the *Man of America*. In the appearance and countenance of the Indians, there is an uncommon uniformity and resemblance. They all possess nearly the same distinguishing characteristics, and together, constitute a distinct race.

Their persons were tall, straight, and well proportioned. Their skins were red, or copper brown; their eyes were small, black, and very active; their hair, long, black, and coarse. Their features were regular and well adjusted, but their countenance expressive of wildness, and ferocity. In constitution, they were firm and vigorous, capable of sustaining great fatigue and hardship.

As to general character, they were quick of apprehension, and not wanting in genius. At times, they were friendly, and even courteous.

\* *Iroquois, The Five Nations.* Afterwards, *The Six Nations.*

---

By what race was the country inhabited?

II. What tribes were in possession at the time of Hudson's discovery?—To what family do they belong?—Give a description of their persons.—Of their general character.

In council, they were distinguished for gravity and eloquence ; in war, for bravery and address. When provoked to anger, they were sullen and retired ; and when determined upon revenge, no danger would deter them ; neither absence nor time could cool them. If captured by an enemy, they never asked life, nor would they betray emotions of fear, even in view of the tomahawk, or the kindling faggot.

Hunting, fishing, and war, constituted the principal employments of the men, and when not engaged in these pursuits, or their occasional amusements, they generally passed their time in a state of absolute inactivity. They were averse to agriculture, and considered it a most degrading avocation. The means of subsistence were mostly derived from the chase, and the spontaneous productions of the earth.

"The *amusements* of the men were principally leaping, shooting at marks, dancing, and gaming,—in all of which they made the most violent exertions. Their dances were usually performed round a large fire. In their war dances, they sung the feats which they or their ancestors had achieved ; represented the manner in which they were performed, and wrought themselves up to an inexpressible degree of martial enthusiasm. The females occasionally joined in some of these sports, but had none peculiar to themselves."

They dressed in the skins of wild beasts, and were fond of ornaments. They arranged the hair in many singular forms, and adorned it with feathers. They perforated the nose and ears, and had pieces of metal, shells, or shining stones attached to them. They painted the face and body with different colors and figures.

Their treatment of females was cruel and oppressive. They were considered by the men as slaves, and treated

---

*What were the principal employments of the men?—How did they obtain the means of subsistence?—What were their amusements?—How were they dressed?—How did they treat their women?*

as such. To them were assigned the labors of the field, and the services of domestic care. Doomed to incessant toil, they performed their perpetual tasks without pity, and without compassion, and often, in return, received the most brutal treatment from their husbands.

They had no written literature except rude hieroglyphics, and consequently no records, or written laws. Their old men became the depositaries of past experience, and by them their debates were chiefly carried on. Their language was rude, but sonorous, metaphorical, and energetic. It was well suited to the purposes of public speaking, and when accompanied by the impassioned gestures, and uttered in the deep guttural tones of the savage, had a singularly wild and impressive effect.

War was considered the most honorable employment, and was carried on chiefly by stratagem and ambuscade. When they fought in the open field, they rushed to the attack with incredible fury, and, at the same time, uttered their appalling war whoop. Their weapons were bows and arrows, headed with flint or other hard stones, which they discharged with great precision and force.

Their *religious notions* consisted of traditions mingled with many superstitions. They believed in two gods, the one good, who was the superior, and whom they styled the Great Spirit; the other evil. They worshipped both. Besides these, they worshipped various other deities, such as fire, water, thunder, anything which they supposed to be superior to themselves, and capable of doing them injury. Their manner of worship was to sing and dance round large fires.

SEC. III. The Iroquois constituted a confederated republic, and were among the most remarkable of the American race. They occupied the greater part of this State, and had made considerable advances in the art of gov-

---

*What is said of their laws? — Of their language? — What was considered the most honorable employment? — How was it carried on? — What were their weapons? — Give some account of their religious notions.*

III. What is said of the Iroquois?

ernment. By their civil combinations, and military talents, they acquired the supremacy over the numerous and warlike nations, by whom they were surrounded.

They\* had been in possession of the country for a long time previous to Hudson's discovery; but were not the original inhabitants of this part of North America. The Mohekanews universally considered themselves as the original inhabitants, and styled the Iroquois *interlopers*. The Iroquois are said to have admitted the fact, and gloried in it; asserting that they had fought their way to their present possessions, and acquired their country by conquering all who had resisted them.

That this united declaration is just, is amply supported by facts. The Mohekanews were spread from the neighborhood of the Pacific Ocean to the eastern shore of New England; and remains of this nation are now to be found in small tribes, dispersed over a large part of North America. This is proved unanswerably by their language.

The Iroquois were planted in the midst of this widely extended nation; and appear to have had no other connexion with them, than what is involved in wars, conquests, and treaties; and nothing in common with them, besides the savage character, and its universal appendages.

At the same time, they were almost invariably at war with some or other of the Mohekanew tribes. With this spirit, and its necessary consequences, it is impossible that they should have made their way through the western branches of the Mohekanews, or, in other words, through enemies dispersed over a territory of near three thousand miles in extent, in any other manner, than by conquest.

SEC. IV. The confederacy† of the Iroquois consisted, originally, of five nations, the Mo-

\* *Dwight's Letters.*

† *Clinton's Discourse.*

*Who were the original inhabitants?—How did the Iroquois obtain possession?*

IV. Of what did the Iroquois Confederacy originally consist?

hawks, the Oneidas, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, and the Senecas. The Mohawks had four towns, and one small village, situated on or near the fertile banks of the river of that name. The position of the first was the confluence of the Schoharie Creek and Mohawk River. The others were further to the west.

The Mohawks, from their martial renown, and military spirit, have not unfrequently given their name to the whole confederacy, which was often denominated the Mohawks in the annals of those days. This nation was always held in the greatest veneration by its associates, and they were declared by the other nations, "the true old heads of the confederacy."

The Oneidas had their principal seat on the south of the Oneida lake; the Onondagas, near the Onondaga; and the Cayugas, near the Cayuga lake. The principal village of the Senecas was near the Genesee river, about twenty miles from Irondequoit bay.

Each nation was divided into three tribes: the Tortoise, the Bear, and the Wolf. Each village was a distinct republic, and its concerns were managed by its peculiar chiefs.

Their exterior relations, general interests, and national affairs, were conducted and superintended by a great council, assembled annually at Onondaga, the central canton,

---

Name them.—In what part were the Mohawks located?—Why have they sometimes given name to the confederacy?—Where was the principal seat of the Oneidas?—Of the Onondagas?—Of the Cayugas?—Of the Senecas?—How was each nation divided?—How were their exterior relations conducted?

composed of the chiefs of each republic ; and eighty sachems were frequently convened at this national assembly.

It took cognisance of the great questions of war and peace, and of the affairs of the tributary nations. All their proceedings were conducted with great deliberation, and were distinguished for order, decorum, and solemnity.

A prominent feature in the character of the confederates, was an exalted spirit of liberty, which revolted with equal indignation at domestic or foreign control. They esteemed themselves as sovereigns, accountable to none, but God alone, whom they called the Great Spirit. They admitted no hereditary distinctions. The office of sachem was the reward of personal merit ; of great wisdom, of commanding eloquence ; of distinguished services in the cabinet, or in the field.

Whatever superiority the Iroquois might have in war, they never neglected the use of stratagem. The cunning of the fox, the ferocity of the tiger, and the power of the lion, were united in their conduct. They preferred to vanquish their enemy, by taking him off his guard, by involving him in an ambuscade ; but when emergencies rendered it necessary for them to face him in the open field, they exhibited a courage and contempt of death, which has never been surpassed.

SEC. V. In the western and interior parts of the state, the remains of fortifications and other works of art have been discovered, bearing marks of great antiquity, and indicating the remote existence of nations far more civilized, than the indigenes of the present race, or any of the known tribes of North America.

---

Of what did this council take cognisance ? — For what were their deliberations distinguished ?

*What prominent feature is mentioned in the character of the confederates ? — How did they esteem themselves ? — What is said of their courage ?*

v. What have been discovered in the western part of the state ?

In Pompey,\* Onondaga county, are vestiges of a town, the area of which included more than five hundred acres. It was protected by three circular or elliptical forts, eight miles distant from each other. They formed a triangle, which enclosed the town. From certain indications, this town seems to have been stormed and taken on the line of the north side.

In Camillus, in the same county, are the remains of two forts, one covering about three acres, on a very high hill. It had one eastern gate, and a communication at the west, towards a spring about ten rods from the fort. Its shape was elliptical. The ditch was deep, and the eastern wall ten feet high.

The other fort is almost half a mile distant, on lower ground, constructed like the other, and about half as large. Shells of testaceous animals, numerous fragments of pottery, pieces of brick, and other signs of an ancient settlement, were found by the first European settlers.

On the east bank of Seneca river, six miles south of Cross and Salt lakes, the remains of ancient Indian defence have been discovered, together with a delineation of ill shapen figures, supposed to have been hieroglyphical, and engraved as with a chisel, on a flat stone, five feet in length, three and a half in breadth, and six inches thick ; evidently a sepulchral monument.

The principal fortification was two hundred and twenty yards in length, and fiftyfive yards in breadth. The bank and corresponding ditch were remarkably entire ; as were two apertures, opposite each other in the middle of the parallelogram, one opening to the water, and the other facing the forest.

About half a mile south of the greater work, was a large half moon, supposed to have been an outwork ; but attended with this singularity, that the extremities of the crescent were from the larger fort. The banks of the ditch, both of this and the first fortress, were covered with trees, that exhibited extremity of age.

\* Yates' and Moulton's History.

---

*Give some account of the remains in Pompey.—In Camillus.*  
—*On the Seneca river.*

The flat stone above mentioned was found over a small elevation in the great fort. Upon removing it, one of the visiting party dug up with his cane a piece of earthen vessel, which, from the convexity of the fragment, was supposed to contain two gallons. It was well burned, of a red color, and had its upper edge indented, as with the finger, in its impressionable state.

Eastward these fortifications have been traced eighteen miles from Manlius Square; and in Oxford, \*Chenango county, on the east bank of Chenango river, are the remains of another fort, remarkable for its great antiquity. Northward as far as Sandy Creek, about fourteen miles from Sacket's Harbor, near which, one covers fifty acres, and contains numerous fragments of pottery.

Westward they are discovered in great number. There is a large one in the town of Onondaga, one in Scipio, two near Auburn, three near Canandaigua, and several between the Seneca, and Cayuga lakes. A number of ancient fortifications and burial places have also been discovered in Ridgeway, Genesee county.

Near the Tonewande creek, at the *double fortified town*\* are some interesting antiquities, described by Dr Kirkland. They are the remains of two forts. The first contained about four acres, and the other, distant about two miles, and situated at the other extremity of the ancient town, enclosed twice that quantity of ground.

The ditch around the former was about five or six feet deep. A small stream of water, and a high bank, circumscribed nearly one third of the enclosed ground. There were traces of six gates or avenues round the ditch, and near the centre, a way was dug to the water. A considerable number of large thrifty oaks had grown up within the enclosed ground, both in and upon the ditch; some of them appeared to be at least two hundred years old or more.

Near the northern fortification, which was situated on

\* This place is called by the Senecas *Tegataineaaaghque*, which imports a double fortified town, or a town, with a fort at each end.

*Mention the most important places where these remains have been found.—Describe the one near the Tonewande Creek.—The remains of the funeral pile.*

high ground, were found the remains of a funeral pile, probably the burying place of the slain, who had fallen in some sanguinary conflict. The earth was raised about six feet above the common surface, and betwixt twenty and thirty feet in diameter. The bones appeared on the whole surface of the raised earth, and stuck out in many places on the sides.

On the south side of lake Erie, are a series of old fortifications, from Cattaragus creek to the Pennsylvania line, a distance of fifty miles. Some are from two to four miles apart, others half a mile only. Some contain five acres. The walls, or breastworks are of earth, and generally on ground where there are appearances of creeks having once flowed into the lake, or where there was a bay.

These vestiges of ancient fortified towns are widely scattered throughout the extensive territory of the Six Nations, and by Indian report in various other parts. There is one on a branch of the Delaware river, which from the size and age of some of the trees, that have grown on the banks, and in the ditches, appears to have existed nearly one thousand years, and perhaps for a still longer period.

SEC. vi. These antiquities afford demonstrative evidence of the remote existence of a vast population settled in towns, defended by forts, cultivating agriculture, and more advanced in civilization, than the nations, which have inhabited the same countries, since the European discovery.

They may be viewed as connecting links of a great chain, which extends beyond the confines of this state, and, becoming more magnificent and curious as we recede from the northern lakes, passes through Ohio into the great vale of the Mississippi, thence to the Gulf of Mexico through Texas, and South America.

In this vast range of more than three thousand miles,

---

*Give some account of the extent of the works. Of their antiquity.*

vi. Of what do these antiquities afford evidence ?  
*How may they be viewed.*

these monuments of ancient skill gradually become more remarkable for their number, magnitude, and interesting variety ; until we are lost in admiration and astonishment, to find in a world, which we call new, ancient institutions, religious ideas, and forms of edifices, similar to those in Asia, which there seem to go back to the dawn of civilization.

SEC. VII. Concerning the authors of these works, we have no authentic account. The Indians obviously know nothing in regard to them, and their traditions on this subject are vague, indefinite, and contradictory. They must have existed a long time previous to European intercourse ; but their origin, the fortunes that attended them, and the disasters, which effected their ruin, have alike been consigned to oblivion.

The same obscurity rests on the origin of the numerous American tribes. That America was peopled from different quarters of the old world, and at different periods, appears to be the most probable conjecture.

Philosophers have identified portions of the American family with their Asiatic, European, and African kindred. But to identify the whole with any primitive stock, except the common ancestors of all mankind, would, we believe, be impossible.

The Indians of this state have been identified with the Tartars of Asia, and this theory is supported by many traits of resemblance. But after so many ages have elapsed, so many intermixtures taken place, and so little history, even of a traditionary kind now before us, the subject will hardly repay the labor of investigation, and any conclusion, at which we might arrive, must be extremely precarious.

---

VII. What is said concerning the authors of these ruins.  
*Of the origin of the American tribes?*

## CHAP. V.

## DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

*Discoveries of Columbus and the Cabots. Great River discovered by Hudson. Hudson detained in England. Dutch trade to the Great River. Licensed Trading Company. First Settlement. West India Company. New Netherland. First Governor. Van Twiller's Administration. Kieft Stuyvesant. New Netherland surrendered to the English.*

SEC. I. *Christopher Columbus*, a native of Genoa, was the first discoverer of America. In 1492, he sailed from Spain with a small fleet, under the patronage of Ferdinand and Isabella, then on the united thrones of Castile and Arragon; and on the 12th of October, discovered *San Salvador*, one of the Bahama Islands. Columbus took possession of the island in the name of Queen Isabella, and after his return to Spain made several other voyages; but did not discover the *continent of America*, until Aug. 1, 1498, when he made the land, now called *Terra Firma* in South America.

In 1497, John, and Sebastian Cabot, commenced a voyage of discovery, under the patronage of Henry VII. king of England. On the 24th of June, they approached *Newfound-*

---

1. When, and by whom was America discovered?—Under whose patronage?—When did he discover the continent?—Give some account of the discoveries by the Cabots.

*land*, and, soon after made the first discovery of the *Continent of America*, and ranged its coast from Labrador to Florida. The attention of all Europe was excited by these enterprises, and numerous voyages were made for the purposes of discovery and settlement. In 1606, James I. king of England, for the purpose of planting two colonies, passed the great North and South Virginia patent, embracing the country from the 34th to the 45th degree of north latitude. *Jamestown* in Virginia, the first permanent settlement in North America, was effected the following year.

SEC. II. On the 3d of September, 1609, the first European discoverer, of whom we have any knowledge, entered the southern waters of New York. Henry Hudson, an English navigator, in the service of the Dutch, anchored his ship within Sandy Hook, and soon after proceeded to New York Bay, discovered Manhattan, and sailed into the river which has since borne his name.

The discovery of a northern passage to the East Indies was at this time a subject of sanguine expectation, and an object of deep interest to the commercial world. For the attainment of this, a London company associated, and in 1607, fitted out a ship under the command of Hudson. He penetrated as far, as  $82^{\circ}$  of north latitude, when the ice arrested his progress. After discovering Spitzbergen, and parts of Greenland before unknown to Europeans, he returned to England.

---

What effect had these enterprises in Europe? — When and where was the first permanent settlement effected in North America?

II. When, and by whom was New York discovered? — What was the object of his enterprise? — Give some account of the expedition in 1607.

In 1608, another expedition was fitted out, and Hudson made a second voyage under the same association. In the main object of the enterprise, he was again unsuccessful. The company then suspended their patronage. Hudson went to Holland, and entered into the service of the celebrated Dutch East India Company.

A small ship called, the *Half-Moon*, was equipped, and entrusted to his command. He left Amsterdam on the 4th of April, 1609, and once more encountered the inclemency of the northern seas. His progress was again intercepted by the ice, and he formed the design of visiting America, in hopes of making some discoveries, that might prove an indemnification for his failure in the north.

He arrived off the banks of Newfoundland early in July, and after coasting as far south, as Virginia, and experiencing severe gales, on the 2d of Sept. he espied the Highlands of Neversink, passed Sandy Hook on the 3d, and on the following day is said to have made his first landing on Coney Island, opposite Gravesend.

SEC. III. Hudson passed one month in exploring the extent of his discovery. Early in October, he put to sea with the intention of returning to Holland. A mutiny having risen among the crew, he was compelled to land in England, where he was detained, by an exercise of the royal prerogative.

While examining the country, Hudson ascended the river with the "Half-Moon" as far as Albany ; and with his boat probably reached the spot upon which is the village of Waterford. In the course of this excursion, he had several friendly interviews with the natives.

---

*Give some account of the expedition in 1608.—Into whose service did Hudson then enter?—Give some account of his next voyage—Where did he first land?*

III. How long did he remain in the country?—What prevented his return to Holland?—How far did he ascend the river?—What is said of his intercourse with the natives?

On his return, however, to Manhattan, a considerable number of the Indians had assembled at the head of the island, and, as he approached, assailed him with a volley of arrows from their canoes. By a few discharges of cannon and muskets, which killed several of the savages, the attack was repulsed, and the assailants put to flight.

§ The Iroquois have a curious tradition with regard to the first interview with the whites. They say, that, a long time ago, before men with a white skin had ever been seen, some Indians, fishing at a place where the sea widens, espied something at a distance moving on the water. What it could be baffled all conjecture. Some supposed it a large fish, or animal, others that it was a very big house floating on the sea. Runners were sent off in all directions to carry the news to their scattered chiefs. When they saw it coming into the river, they concluded that it must be a remarkable large house, in which the Manitto, (or Great Spirit,) was coming to visit them. The chiefs now assembled at York Island, and made preparations to receive their Manitto.

The vessel at length comes to anchor, and some of the crew approach the shore in a boat. The Indians are amazed at their color and dress, particularly of one, who glittered in red, and whom they supposed must be the Manitto. On their landing, the chiefs and wise men form a circle, into which the supposed Manitto with two attendants entered. He salutes them with a friendly countenance, and they return his salute after their manner.

A large elegant *Hock-hack* (*gourd or bottle,*) is brought by one of the Manitto's servants, from which, a substance is poured into a cup or glass, and handed to the Manitto. He drinks, has the cup refilled and handed to the chief near him, who smells it, and passes it to the next. The cup in this manner passes round the circle, when one of them, a great warrior, harangues them on the impropriety of returning the cup unemptied. It was handed to them, he said, by the Manitto, to drink out of, as he had. To follow his example would please him—to reject it might provoke his wrath, and if no one else would, he would drink it, let what would follow.

He then took the cup, and, bidding adieu to those around, drank the contents. He soon began to stagger. He rolled on the ground, and fell asleep. They at first thought he had expired, but soon perceived he still breathed. He awoke, jumped up, and declared he never felt more happy. He asked for more, and the whole assembly imitating him became intoxicated.

After this intoxication ceased, during which the whites confined themselves to their vessel, the man in red returned, and distributed among them beads, axes, hoes, and stockings. The whites made them understand that they would return home, and visit them again the next year with presents.

Accordingly the vessel arrived the following year, and they were much rejoiced to see each other; but the whites laughed, when they

saw the axes and hoes hanging as ornaments to their breasts, and the stockings used as tobacco pouches. The whites now put handles in the former, and cut down trees before their eyes, and dug the ground, and showed them the use of stockings. Here they say a general laughter ensued, to think they had remained ignorant of the use of these things, and had borne so long such heavy metal suspended from their necks.\*

SEC. IV. Hudson, on his arrival in England, being forbidden by the English Government to return to Holland, or again enter the service of the Dutch, reentered the service of the London company, which had patronised him in his two first voyages.

He transmitted, to the Dutch East India directors, the journal of his recent voyage, with an account of his discoveries; and the "Half-Moon," after being sometime detained at Dartmouth, was permitted to return to Amsterdam, where she arrived early in 1610. In April of the same year, Hudson was again sent out, by the London company, on a northern expedition, from which he never returned.

The last voyage and tragical fate of this distinguished navigator, are subjects to which we cannot advert, without the most painful emotions. After encountering for a long time the dangers of the northern seas, a mutiny broke out among the crew, and Hudson with eight others, was placed in an open boat, and abandoned to the tempests of those inhospitable regions.

Nothing more has ever been heard from them, and they probably either perished in a storm, or by the more protracted horrors of famine. The English deeply lamented the loss of a countryman, whose achievements as a navi-

\* Moulton.

---

IV. What did Hudson do on his arrival in England?—What is said of the "Half Moon"?—On what expedition was Hudson again sent out?

Give some account of his fate.

gator, had reflected honor on a nation already distinguished for its illustrious seamen. Hudson's personal qualities and virtues, displayed during his four voyages, at times which were calculated to try character, will ever be contemplated with pleasure and admiration.

SEC. v. 1610. The Dutch East India company fitted out a ship for a second visit to the newly discovered land, for the purpose of trade. The only object was a cargo of furs, but the voyage was more important in its consequences, being the prelude to the fur trade, which led to the subsequent colonization of the country.

The directors of the East India company, who had patronised Hudson's design of a northern passage to India, though disappointed in this object, appreciated his minor discovery. They looked to the *Great River*, and anticipated in the fur trade, an indemnity for past expenses. This article could now be obtained from the Indians in America on more advantageous terms, than formerly from the north of Europe.

The voyage was successful, and therefore repeated. The fame of its profits and of the country stimulated adventurers; and within three years, much competition arose in this new branch of the commerce of Holland.

The effects of this rivalry were sensibly felt by those, who had seconded Hudson's voyage. A memorial was therefore presented to their High Mightinesses the Lords States-General, stating, that they, who had incurred the expense and risk of originating discoveries, were prevented, by an unjust competition, from realizing an adequate remuneration.

SEC. vi. 1614. The States passed an edict on the 27th of March that "all persons, who had discovered, or might discover any rivers, bays,

---

v. What was the object of the expedition in 1610?—What can you say of the consequences of the voyage?

*Was the voyage successful?—What followed?*

vi. What edict was passed by the States General in 1614?

or harbors, or countries before unknown, should enjoy, besides other advantages, the exclusive trade there for four successive voyages." This act was the foundation of the Amsterdam Licensed Trading West India Company.

The members of this company had a double object ; to secure the possession of the Great River by fortifications, and to extend their commercial privileges under the edict by the discovery of circumjacent places. Two ships were the same year fitted out for the accomplishment of this purpose.

SEC. VII. In the fall of 1614, the first fortified settlement was established on Castle Island, a short distance below Albany. In the following year, 1615 a similar establishment was effected at Manhattan, on an elevated spot near the southern extremity of the island.\*

It has been affirmed, that as early, as 1613, an insignificant warehouse was erected on a small island just below Albany ; and that in 1614, four houses were on the island of Manhattan.

If such was the fact, they must have been temporary in design, and consequently frail in structure ; for, it is hardly probable, that any fortified, or permanent settlement could have been contemplated, so long as the country was unappropriated, and its trade participated by all adventurers.

In 1617, the fort on Castle Island was abandoned in consequence of the high floods, and a new fortification erected a few miles south on the shore of Nordtman's Kill.

\*On the site of the Macomb houses in Broadway, New York.

---

Of what company was this act the foundation ?

*What was the object of this Company ?*

VII. When, and where was the first fortified settlement established ?—When at Manhattan ?

*Why is it not probable settlements were made earlier than this ?*

These establishments must, at this period, be viewed, as purely of a military and commercial character. Nothing further was contemplated until 1620, when the Dutch conceived the project of forming a great National Society and under its auspices a permanent settlement on the Great River.

SEC. VIII. 1620. On the third of June, the grant was obtained from their High Mightinesses, the States General for the establishment, and organization of the Privileged West Indian Company.

The Amsterdam Licensed Trading Company, with all its rights to the trade and territory of the new world, became merged in this national society, which, being endowed with more ample powers and greater resources, would be able to establish fortifications and settlements, on a stronger and more enlarged basis.

SEC. IX. In 1623, the first ship of the West Indian Company arrived at the Great River.—The name of Belgium, or New Netherland, was bestowed upon the country.

This name was intended to comprehend the country discovered by Hudson; and though its boundaries became involved in doubt and controversy, yet it was apparently understood, at that time, by the Dutch, to extend from the Delaware river to Cape Cod.

Two forts were, this year (1623,) commenced; fort New Amsterdam, on a commanding elevation, south of the

---

*How must these establishments be viewed?*

**VIII.** What national society was established in 1620?—What was its object?

**IX.** When did the first ship of this company arrive?—What name was given to the country?—What was the name intended to comprehend?

*What forts were erected the present year?*

original redoubt on Manhattan, and fort Orange, on the west bank of the Hudson at Albany.

SEC. x. In 1625, the West Indian Company freighted two ships, in one of which, the first Governor, or director, Peter Minuit, arrived in New Netherland.

The first emigrants under Minuit appear to have been from the river Waal in Guelderland, and, under the name of Waaloons, founded the first permanent settlement beyond the cannon of Fort Amsterdam. They settled on Long Island at the bend of the shore opposite Manhattan.

They were the first who professionally pursued agriculture. Temporary locations, for other purposes, had been made at other places. The limited extent of settlements, the single condition, and peculiar pursuits of those, who had arrived previous to this period, may be inferred from the fact, that, in June of the present year, the first child of European parentage was born in New Netherland.\*

For some years, the settlements progressed but slowly. In 1629, the Company adopted a charter of "Liberties and exemptions for patroons, masters, and private individuals, who should plant colonies in New Netherland, or import thither any neat cattle."

The liberality of this charter towards Patroons induced Goodyn, Bloemart, Van Renselaer, and others, of the Commissioners of New Netherland, to send Wouter Van Twiller, as agent, to inspect the condition of the country, and the purchase of lands from the natives, for the purpose of settlement. During this and the subsequent year, several purchases were made.

\* Sarah Rapaelje, daughter of Jan Joris Rapaelje.

x. Who was the first Governor?—When did he arrive?—What can you say of the first emigrants?—Of the progress of the settlements?—What measures did the Company take in 1629?

*What success attended them?*

SEC. XI. 1633. Minuit was recalled, and Wouter Van Twiller arrived at fort Amsterdam with sole power as governor of New Netherland.

Disturbances in the colony, which, by some, have been attributed to the influence of Van Twiller, during his first visit, occasioned the recall of Minuit. The arrival of Van Twiller, as governor, gave a fresh impulse to the settlements, and agricultural pursuits, which under Minuit had been less flourishing than the commercial concerns of the colony. During Van Twiller's administration originated the controversy occasioned by the encroachments of the English, which afterwards proved the source of so much rancorous, but bloodless hostility.

SEC. XII. 1638, William Kieft succeeded Van Twiller, as governor of New Netherland. Two years after the commencement of his administration, the English had overspread the eastern part of Long Island, and advanced to Oyster bay.

Kieft broke up their settlement in 1642, and fitted out two sloops to drive the English out of the Schuylkill, of which the Marylanders had lately possessed themselves.

The English from the eastward soon after sent deputies to New Amsterdam, for the accommodation of their disputes about limits. We do not learn, however, that any settlement resulted from their negotiations.

The English were continually becoming more powerful, and constantly extending their possessions. In 1643, the colonies of Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, entered into a league, both against the

---

XI. Who was the second Governor?

*What is said of disturbances in the colony?—Of Van Twiller's Administration?*

XII. Who succeeded Van Twiller?—What can you say of the encroachments of the English?

*What design are they said to have formed?*

Dutch and Indians, and are said to have met shortly after, upon a design of extirpating the former.

In addition to the New England controversies, the Dutch appear to have suffered, about the close of Kieft's administration, from the hostilities of the Indians. In 1646, a severe battle was fought on a part of Strickland's Plain, called Horse Neck. The battle was contested with mutual obstinacy and fury, and great numbers were killed on both sides. The Dutch ultimately kept the field.

**SEC. XIII. 1647.** Peter Stuyvesant arrived at Fort Amsterdam, as Governor, and laid claim to all the lands, rivers, and streams, from Cape Henlopen to Cape Cod. Three years after, he went to Hartford, and demanded a surrender to the Dutch of all the lands on Connecticut river.

After a controversy of several days, the subject was left to the decision of arbitrators, who concluded articles of adjustment, with regard to boundaries and occupancy of lands already settled.

Long Island was divided ; the eastern part was to be held by the English, the western by the Dutch. On the main the boundaries were amicably adjusted. The Dutch were to hold the lands on Connecticut river, of which they were then possessed ; the residue on each side of the river to belong to the English.

**SEC. XIV. 1664.** Charles the Second, king of England, fearful of the consequences of having the Dutch settled in the midst of his colonies, determined to dispossess them ; and, for this purpose, made a grant to his brother, the

---

*What is said of Indian hostilities ?*

**xiii.** Who succeeded Kieft ?—What claims did he make ?—How was the controversy decided ?

**xiv.** Why did Charles II. determine to dispossess the Dutch ?—What grant did he make ?

Duke of York and Albany, of all the territory claimed by the Dutch, together with other parts of North America.

The patent included all the main land of New England beginning at St Croix, extending to the rivers Connecticut and Hudson, "together with the said river called Hudson's river, and all the lands from the west side of Connecticut river to the east side of Delaware bay." Col. Richard Nichols, with several others, was commissioned to take possession in the king's name, and to exercise jurisdiction.

SEC. xv. Nichols with four frigates, and three hundred soldiers, appeared before Manhattan, and demanded the surrender of the fort. As the fort was in no condition for defence, Stuyvesant, after some negotiation, was compelled to surrender on the 27th of August, 1664. The most liberal terms of capitulation were granted.

By the terms of surrender, the governor and inhabitants were to become British subjects; to possess their estates without molestation, and enjoy their modes of worship without hindrance. New Amsterdam was now called, in honor of the duke of York, New York; and Fort Orange, which surrendered soon after, was called Albany.

The squadron then sailed for the Delaware, to reduce the Dutch and Swedes on that bay and river, who soon were compelled to surrender to the English.

Col. Nichols represented the town of New York, as be-

---

*What did this patent include? — Who was commissioned to take possession?*

xv. Give some account of the surrender of New Netherland to the English? — What were the terms of surrender? — What name was given to the country? — How is the town of New York represented at this time.

ing at this time, “composed of a few miserable houses, occupied by men extremely poor, and the whole in a mean condition. He however prognosticated its future greatness, if indulged with the immunities, which he then recommended.



## CHAP. VI.

## FROM 1665 TO 1710.

*Administration of Nichols. Lovelace. New York retaken by the Dutch, and soon after restored to the English. Andros. Dongan. Revolution. Leisler. Sloughter. Bello-mont. War with the French, &c.*

SEC. I. 1665. Nichols having taken possession of the country, assumed the government, with the title of “deputy governor, under his royal highness, the duke of York, of all his territories in America.” He next proceeded to erect a court of assizes, consisting of the governor, council, and justices of the peace, who now commenced the compilation of a body of laws.

The court of assizes collected into one code the ancient customs and usages, with such additional improvements as the great change of things required, regarding the laws of England as the supreme rule. These ordinances were transmitted to England, and confirmed by the duke of York, the following year.

---

1. Who assumed the government in 1665?—Give some account of his proceedings.

*In what manner was this code established?*

On the 12th of June, the inhabitants of New York were incorporated under the care of a mayor, five aldermen, and a sheriff. Previous to this time the city was ruled by a scout, burgomasters, and schepens.

SEC. II. 1667. After having for three years exercised the government with integrity and ability, Nichols resigned. Col. Francis Lovelace was appointed by the duke to succeed him. Under Lovelace, the affairs of the colony were happily administered until its re-surrender to the Dutch, which put an end to his power, and is the only event, that signalized his administration.

SEC. III. 1673. A second Dutch war having recently commenced, a small squadron was sent from Holland, which arrived at Staten Island, on the 30th of July. The commander of the fort at New York sent a messenger, and treacherously surrendered to the enemy.

The same day, the Dutch ships came up, moored under the fort, landed their men, and entered the garrison without giving, or receiving a shot. The city immediately followed the example of the fort; and soon after, all New Netherland submitted to the same humiliating submission.

Anthony Colve was constituted governor, but enjoyed his office for a very short season.

---

When was New York incorporated?

II. Who succeeded Nichols?—What is said of his administration?

III. Give some account of the surrender of New York to the Dutch.—Who was constituted governor?—When, and in what manner was New York restored to the English?

On the 9th of Feb. 1674, a treaty of peace was concluded between England and the States General of Holland, by which New Netherlands was restored to the English.

SEC. IV. 1674. At the close of the war, the duke of York, to remove all controversy respecting his property in America, took out a new patent from the king; and commissioned Maj. Edward Andros, "governor of New York, and all his territories in these parts." The Dutch, in October, resigned their authority to Andros, who immediately received the submission of the inhabitants.

Andros, the following year, made efforts to acquire the country of Connecticut river, but was effectually frustrated by the spirited conduct of the Connecticut colony.

1677. Andros sent a sloop with some forces to the Province of Maine, to take possession of the lands, which had been granted to the duke of York; and in the following year built a fort at Pemaquid.

The province of New York contained, at this time, about twentyfour towns, villages, or parishes, in six precincts, ridings, or courts of sessions. The militia of the province amounted to about two thousand.

Its annual exports, beside peas, beef, pork, tobacco and peltry, consisted of about sixty thousand bushels of wheat. Its annual imports were to the value of about fifty thousand pounds. The city of New York contained at this period three hundred and fortythree houses.

The administration of Andros appears not to have been remarkably popular. The principal part of his public

---

iv. Who was appointed Governor?—What efforts did he make the following year?—What enterprise in 1677.

*What can you say of the colony at this time?—Its exports?—Imports?—City of N. Y.?—Of Andros's administration?*

proceedings, during his continuance in the province, was comprised in the ordinary acts of the government, which then consisted mostly in passing of grants, and presiding in the court of assize.

SEC. v. 1682. Thomas Dongan was appointed by the duke of York, to supersede Andros in the government of the province; but did not arrive at New York, until August of the following year.

1683. The court of assizes, council, and corporation of New York having requested that the people should have a participation in the choice of their rulers, on the arrival of Dongan, orders were given to summon the freeholders for the choice of representatives. The assembly consisted of a council of ten, and house of representatives consisting of eighteen members.

SEC. vi. 1686. James the Second, formerly duke of York, having now come to the throne, refused, on the renewal of governor Dongan's commission, to confirm the privileges granted, when he was duke. The assembly was prohibited, and printing forbidden. Much disaffection at this time prevailed among the colonists on account of the appointment of professed papists to the principal crown offices. Albany was this year incorporated.

In the following year, the French court aimed a blow, which threatened to destroy the British interest in North America. M. Denonville

---

When, and by whom was Andros superseded? — What took place on the arrival of Dongan?

vi. What took place on the accession of James II.? — The following year?

with fifteen hundred French and five hundred Indians took the field against the Senecas. The latter were known to be firmly attached to the English, and it was therefore determined to make them examples of French resentment to all others.

When Denonville with his army had arrived within a quarter of a league of the chief village of the Senecas, the Indians, who lay in ambush, suddenly raised the war shout, with a discharge of fire-arms. This surprise threw the French into confusion, of which the Senecas took the advantage, and fell on them with great fury ; but the French Indians rallied, at length, and repulsed them.

In this action, a hundred Frenchmen, ten French Indians, and about eighty Senecas were killed. The next day, Denonville marched forward with the intention of burning the village, but found it in ashes. The Senecas had burned it, and fled. Nothing was left to employ the valor of the soldiers, but the corn in the fields, which they effectually destroyed.

The war was undertaken by the French chiefly to put a stop to the English trade, which was extending itself into the continent, and would in consequence ruin theirs. Denonville soon after returned to Canada.

SEC. VII. 1688. It was determined to add New York and the Jerseys, to the jurisdiction of New England. A new commission was passed in March appointing Andros captain-general, and vice-admiral over the whole.

Francis Nicholson was soon after named his lieutenant, with the accustomed authority. The constitution established, on this occasion, was a legislative and executive governor, and

---

*Give some account of the action ? — What was the object of the French in this war ?*

vii. What alteration was made in the government in 1688 ?

council, who were appointed by the king, without the consent of the people.

In the following year James having abdicated, William, prince of Orange, and Mary, daughter of James, ascended the throne. This intelligence was joyfully received at New York.

SEC. VIII. 1689. Jacob Leisler, with forty-nine men, seized the garrison at New York, and held it for the prince of Orange. William and Mary were proclaimed there in June ; and the province was now ruled by a committee of safety, at the head of which was Leisler.

Andros had been previously seized and imprisoned by the citizens of Boston. Nicholson, with the council and civil officers, made all the opposition in their power to Leisler, but it was ineffectual. Nicholson absconded, and Leisler assumed supreme authority.

Leisler's assumption of command excited the envy and hatred of many of the people ; at the head of whom were Col. Bayard and the mayor, who being unable to make any effectual resistance in New York, retired to Albany.

A letter arrived from England, directed to " Francis Nicholson, Esq., or in his absence, to such as, for the time being, take care for preserving the peace and administering the laws." Nicholson having absconded, Leisler considered the letter directed to himself, and assumed the title and authority of lieutenant governor.

SEC. IX. Albany, though friendly to William and Mary, refused subjection to Leisler ; to compel which, Leisler sent his son in law, Milborn, with an armed force. Albany was re-

---

VIII. Give some account of the revolution, which took place in 1689.

*What is said of Leisler's assumption of command ?*

IX. What occurred at Albany ?

duced in the following spring, and Nicholson and Bayard imprisoned.

During the year 1689, the Five Nations renewed their covenant with the English, and soon after made a descent upon Montreal in Canada, attended with terrible massacre and devastation. Many plantations were burned, and the whole French colony thrown into consternation.

SEC. x. 1690. Count Frontenac detached several parties of French and Indians from Canada, to take different routes into the English territories. One party, consisting of 150 French and Indian traders, and as many Indians, surprised and destroyed Schenectady. The assault was made about 12 o'clock on Saturday night, and 60 men, women, and children were massacred.

The inhabitants had no intimation of their approach, until their doors were broken open, and the enemy entered, and began the perpetration of the most inhuman barbarities. No tongue, says Col. Schuyler, can express the cruelties that were committed.

SEC. xi. 1691. Col. Henry Sloughter arrived at New York, with the commission of governor of the province. The first assembly, after the revolution, was holden on the ninth of April. The province was, by an act of the assembly, divided into ten counties.

The arbitrary acts of James were repealed, and the former privileges restored to the colo-

---

What enterprise of the Indians in 1689 ?

x. What enterprise of the French in 1690 ?

xi. Who was next appointed governor of New York ? — What took place on his arrival ?

ny. Leisler and Milborne, having made a vain attempt to retain their authority and refused to deliver up the fort to the governor, were condemned to death for high treason, and soon after executed. Sloughter died suddenly in July, 1691, and ended a short, but weak, and turbulent administration.

The distractions in the province so entirely engrossed the public attention, that the Indian allies, who had been left solely to contend against the common enemy, became extremely disaffected. In the summer of 1691, Major Schuyler with a party of Mohawks passed through Lake Champlain, and made a bold and successful irruption into the French settlements at the north end of the lake. The design in this descent was to animate the Indians, and continue their hostility to the French. They, accordingly, continued their hostilities against them, and by frequent incursions, kept the country in constant alarm.

An Indian, called Black Kettle, commanded in these excursions of the Five Nations, and his successes so exasperated the French, that they ordered an Indian prisoner to be burnt alive. The bravery of this savage was as extraordinary, as the torments inflicted on him were cruel. He sung his military achievements without interruption, even while his bloody executioners practised all possible barbarities. They broiled his feet, thrust his fingers into red hot pipes, cut his joints, and twisted the sinews with bars of iron. After this, his scalp was ripped off, and hot sand poured on the wound.

SEC. XII. 1692. On the death of governor Sloughter, the council committed the chief command to Richard Ingolsby. In August, Col. Benjamin Fletcher arrived, with a com-

---

*What is said of the Indian affairs? — Of Schuyler's expedition? What was the design of this descent? — What is said of their incursions? — Of Black Kettle?*

**xii.** Who was appointed governor in 1692?

mission of governor. In the following year, he introduced the episcopal church into the province.

Early in the year 1693, Count Frontenac, with an army of six or seven hundred French and Indians, made an irruption into the territory of the Mohawks. In this descent, three hundred of the Indians, in the interest of the English, were made prisoners.

Col. Schuyler, with a party from Albany, pursued the enemy, and several skirmishes ensued. When the French reached the north branch of Hudson's river, a cake of ice opportunely served them to cross it, and Schuyler, who had retaken about fifty Indians, desisted from the pursuit. The French, in this enterprise, lost about eighty men.

By the charter of Connecticut, that state had exclusive power over its own militia; but, by the plenary powers vested in the governor of New York, he had also command over them. Fletcher, the governor, insisted on submission, which being refused, he went to Hartford while the legislature were in session, to compel obedience.

He ordered his commission to be read to the trainbands of Hartford, then under exercise of their senior officer, Capt. Wadsworth. As soon as the reading commenced, the captain ordered the drums to beat. It was in vain, that the governor commanded silence. Three attempts were made to read, each of which was futile; the governor crying out, "silence, silence," and the captain bawling "drum, drum."

At length the governor, on being told by Wadsworth, that if he again interrupted his drumming he would "make the sun shine through him," relinquished all hope of success against such obstinacy, and returned to New York.

---

Give some account of the incursion of the French in 1693.

*For what did Fletcher go to Connecticut?—How did he succeed?*

SEC. XIII. Mr Fletcher's administration was characterised by much turbulence, and frequent disagreement between him and the assembly. The raising and appropriating the revenue, and the religious concerns of the colony, constituted the usual subjects of controversy. He left the province in 1695.

An act had been passed by the assembly for the support and encouragement of the clergy. Fletcher, who was a bigoted episcopalian, made efforts to have the act so framed, that the appreципiations might be exclusively devoted to the episcopal clergy.

In their session of April, on receiving a petition from the church wardens and vestrymen of the city of New York, the House declared it to be their opinion, "That the vestrymen and church wardens have a power to call a dissenting protestant minister, and, that he is to be paid and maintained, as the act directs."

Trinity Church, in the city of New York, was built in the following year; and the Reformed Protestant Dutch Church incorporated. The city at this time contained five hundred and ninetyfour houses, and six thousand inhabitants. The shipping of New York consisted of forty ships, sixtytwo sloops, and sixty boats.

SEC. XIV. In 1696, Frontenac made another irruption with a large force, and carried devastation into the possessions of the Five Nations. After this expedition, small parties of the Indians, in the English interest, continued to harass the inhabitants near Montreal; and similar parties, in the French interest, to harass those near Albany, until the peace of Ryswick, in 1697.

---

XIII. What is said of his administration?—What were the subjects of controversy?

What can you say of the city at this time?

XIV. What can you say of the war in 1696?

SEC. xv. 1698. Richard, earl of Bellomont, who had been appointed the previous year to succeed Fletcher, arrived, and assumed the government. The assembly of the province, at this time, consisted of but nineteen members.

In the following year, M. de Callieres, succeeding Count Frontenac as governor of Canada, terminated the existing disputes between the French and the Five Nations, by agreeing to have an exchange of prisoners at Onondaga.

SEC. xvi. Lord Bellomont died in March, 1701, and John Nanfan, who had been previously appointed lieutenant governor, arrived soon after, and assumed the command. Lord Cornbury was appointed governor the following year. After an administration, distinguished only by his oppression, avarice, and injustice, he was superseded, in 1708, by lord Lovelace. The war between England and France was again proclaimed in 1702; but, with the exception of an expedition against Canada some years after, its operations in the colony were not attended with *any remarkable* event.

In 1701, a Court of Chancery was organised in the province of New York. During the summer of the following year, an uncommon mortality prevailed in the city of New York, which distinguished this period, as "the time of the great sickness." Three years after, the city was thrown into great consternation by the appearance of a French privateer in the harbor.

A fruitless attempt was made, in 1709, to conquer Canada, in which the province of New York discovered much zeal. Besides raising several companies, she procured six

---

xv. By whom was Fletcher succeeded?

xvi. Who succeeded Lord Bellomont?—Who were the next governors?—What is said of Cornbury?—What is said of the war?

hundred Indians, paid their wages, and maintained a thousand of their wives and children at Albany, while they were in the campaign, at the expense of above twenty thousand pounds.

In 1710, Col. Schuyler went to England, to inculcate on the ministry, the absolute necessity of reducing Canada to the crown of Great Britain. The more effectually to accomplish this, he carried with him five Indian chiefs; who gave assurances to the queen of their fidelity, and solicited her assistance against their common enemies, the French.



## CHAP. VII.

### FROM 1710 TO 1743.

*Hunter's administration. Expedition against Canada. Administration of Burnet, Montgomery, Crosby, and Clarke.*

SEC. I. 1710. Col. Robert Hunter was appointed, governor of the province, and arrived in June. He brought over with him near three thousand Palatines, who had fled to England, the year before, from the rage of persecution in Germany.

Many of these people settled in the city of New York; others, on a tract of several thousand acres in the manor of Livingston; while others went into Pennsylvania.

SEC. II. In 1711, Nicholson went to England, and solicited another expedition against Canada, which was granted, and an armament ordered, proportional to the magnitude of the

---

1. Who was appointed governor in 1710? — Who came over with him?

enterprise. New York, New England, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania provided the quotas of men intended for the expedition.

Soon after his return from Europe, Nicholson proceeded to Albany to take command of the troops of Connecticut, New York, and New Jersey, consisting of about a thousand Palatines, who had come to New York some time before, six hundred Indians, and the regiments commanded by Colonels Whiting, Schuyler and Ingolsby ; amounting, in the whole to upwards of four thousand.

The fleet, consisting of fifteen men of war, forty transports, six store ships, and an excellent train of artillery, under the command of Sir Hovenden Walker, set sail from Boston with a land army, consisting of five regiments from Europe, and two, from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, making in all about seven thousand.

The Admiral arrived in the St. Lawrence early in August, and on the 22d, in a thick fog and high wind, the fleet was driven on the rocks and shoals of the north shore. Eight or nine of the British transports were lost, and above a thousand lives, besides great damage done to the vessels saved. The Admiral bore away for Spanish bay, where, after full consultation, it was agreed to abandon the expedition.

Gen. Nicholson, who had proceeded as far as lake George with his troops, received information of the failure of the enterprise, and retreated.

SEC. III. The conquest of Canada had been an object of earnest desire, and sanguine expectation to the colony ; and the failure of this last enterprise was attended by circumstances, equally mortifying and calamitous. They had suffered heavy losses, and were again exposed to the depredations of their ancient foe. The

II. What expedition was soon after undertaken ?

*Give some account of it*

III. What is said of the failure of his enterprise ?

war was however terminated, in 1713, by the treaty of Utrecht, and their apprehensions, for the present, relieved.

In 1712, the Tuscarora Indians, after having been defeated in an attempt to exterminate the English settlers in North Carolina, abandoned their country, and repaired to the Five Nations, who received them into their confederacy, and made them the sixth nation.

The same year, the negroes in New York, in the execution of a plot to set fire to the city, burned a house in the night, and killed several people, who came to extinguish the fire. Nineteen of the incendiaries were afterward executed.

SEC. IV. During the early part of Hunter's administration, much disagreement prevailed between the different departments of government, and their respective partisans. His exercising the office of chancellor was received with high disapprobation by a large portion of the inhabitants. Before his leaving the province, they appear to have become reconciled, and the most perfect concord to have subsisted.

Hunter, by the advice of his council, began to exercise the office of chancellor in October, 1712. Van Dam and Philipse were appointed masters. Whillman, register, Harrison examiner, and Sharpes and Broughton, clerks. A proclamation was then issued to signify the sitting of the court, which gave rise to the two following resolutions of the house. "Resolved, that the erecting a court of chancery, without consent in general assembly, is contrary to law, and of dangerous consequence to the liberty and property of the subjects; and, "That the establishing fees, without consent in general assembly, is contrary to law." The assembly were prorogued the next session.

Hunter left the province in 1719, and the

---

*Of the Tuscarora Indians? — Of a plot in New York?*

iv. What can you say of Hunter's administration?

command devolved on Peter Schuyler. During his short administration, Schuyler conducted the affairs of the colony with prudence and integrity. Little is observable in his time, except a treaty at Albany, with the Indians for confirming the ancient league.

SEC. v. 1720. On the 17th of September, William Burnet, Esq. assumed the government of the province, and soon after obtained an act from the assembly, prohibiting the trade between New York and Canada. This prohibitory act had a very beneficial effect on the interests of the colony.

From the conclusion of the peace of Utrecht, a considerable trade was carried on between Albany and Canada, for goods saleable among the Indians. The object of this act was to draw the Indian trade into New York; and to obstruct the communication between the French and the Indian allies, which gave them frequent opportunities of seducing them from their fidelity; and to regain the Caghuagas, who had become interested in their disaffection, by being the carriers between Albany and Montreal.

SEC. vi. In 1720, for the purpose of securing the benefit of the trade, and friendship of the Six Nations, Gov. Burnet erected a trading house at Oswego, in the country of the Senecas.

This establishment naturally excited the jealousy of the French, who, in 1726, launched two vessels into lake Ontario, and transported materials to Niagara, for building a store house, and repairing the fort. Their object was not only to secure the entrance into the west end of the lake, but likewise to carry their trade more westerly, and thus

---

Of Schuyler?

v. Who was appointed governor in 1720?—What act was passed.

*What is said of the trade with Canada?*

*What measures were taken by the French?*

vi. What took place in 1720.

render Oswego useless, by shortening the travels of the western Indians near two hundred miles.

SEC. VII. In 1727, Burnet erected a fort for the protection of the establishments at Oswego, and made all the exertions in his power to defeat the designs of the French at Niagara. He was, however, much embarrassed by the opposition he received from the assembly.

The prohibitory act, passed soon after his arrival, notwithstanding its salutary influence on the interests of the colony, was extremely unpopular. This, with several decrees in chancery, and other untoward circumstances, proved the source of a violent and unreasonable opposition in the assembly.

SEC. VIII. A new assembly met in September, but consisted entirely of members disaffected to the governor. They were dissolved by him, and he immediately resigned the government, and was appointed to the command of Massachusetts Bay. Notwithstanding the turbulence of Burnet's administration, none ever conducted the affairs of the colony with more ability and integrity.

SEC. IX. 1728, James Montgomery, Esq. having been appointed to supersede Burnet, arrived, and, April 15th, received the great seal of the province, and assumed the government.

In the following year, the acts of Mr Burnet were repealed by the king, and the trade between Albany and Montreal encouraged

---

VII. What establishment was made at Oswego? — For what object?

VIII. What measures were pursued by Burnet?

What rendered him unpopular?

What is said of his administration?

IX. By whom was he superseded?

though much to the prejudice of the national interest. Montgomery's short administration presents a period of great tranquillity, and was not distinguished by any remarkable event.

SEC. x. 1731, Governor Montgomery died in July, and the command devolved upon Rip Van Dam, Esq., who was the oldest counsellor.

This administration was unfortunately signalized by the memorable encroachment at Crown-Point. By the erection of fort St. Frederick, the French secured the absolute command of lake Champlain.

SEC. xi. 1732. In August, William Crosby, Esq. arrived with a commission to govern the province, and commenced his administration under the most favorable auspices.

Attempts had been made the preceding year in the British parliament, for the encouragement of the sugar colonies, and the consequent depression of the American trade. These attempts had excited general apprehension in the colony of New York, for the safety of her commerce.

Governor Crosby, while in England, had been very active in his opposition to these measures. The inhabitants of New York were on this account deeply prejudiced in his favor, and no appointment could, at this time, have been made, more in accordance with their wishes.

On his arrival, he issued his proclamation adjourning the assembly to the 19th of August. One of the first acts of this body, upon their meeting, was to vote an address to his excellency, congratulating him on his safe ar-

---

x. What followed?—When, and in what manner was this administration terminated?

xi. Who succeeded to the command?—What is said of his administration?

Who was the next governor?

How was his appointment received by the people?—Why?—What vote was passed by the assembly?

rival, and to return him the thanks of the house for his opposition, while in England, to the act in favor of the sugar islands.

The governor, in his communications to the house, intimated his confidence in receiving from it a revenue, in as full and ample a manner, as had been granted in former assemblies, and directed their attention to the garrison at Oswego, representing the place to be in a ruinous condition, and its importance in securing and maintaining the Indian trade. The assembly, in its answer to the governor, was profuse in terms of respect; but cautious in committing itself, on the subject of revenue.

SEC. XII. The finances were at this time much embarrassed; while the frequent demands for supplies, had imposed a serious burthen upon the colony, and afforded much reason for complaint. The wars between France and England had almost drained its resources, and subjected it to a heavy debt.

The assembly, however, proceeded to make liberal appropriations for the several objects proposed by the governor. In addition to the numerous others, bills were passed, for encouraging a public school to teach Latin, Greek, and the mathematics; for discharging the demands upon the trading house at Oswego, and for confirming to the city of New York its rights and privileges.

SEC. XIII. 1734. The establishment of a court of equity was agitated in the assembly. The governors had previously exercised the office of chancellor. This exercise of power had, for a long time, excited the jealousy of the colonists, and been productive of much rancorous controversy. After an animated debate, the assembly were unable to come to any resolution.

---

*Give some account of the governor's communications.*

*XII. What is said of the finances at this time?*

*Give some account of the proceedings of the assembly.*

*XIII. What is said of the establishment of a court of equity?*

The court party had insisted, that the governor was, *ex officio*, chancellor of the colony; while the popular party had warmly opposed this position, and denied, that such a court could exist, unless by prescription, or by act of parliament.

Some time after the close of the session, certain publications appeared in a paper, called "Zenger's New York Weekly Journal," which contained severe animadversions on the government. This paper was supposed to be published under the patronage of Mr Van Dam, and was, of course, decidedly hostile to the court.

Several printed ballads likewise appeared, which placed some of the members of the legislature in a ludicrous point of view, insomuch that the governor and council considered the subject worthy of notice.

They voted, that the obnoxious numbers of Zenger's paper, and two printed ballads, were derogatory to the dignity of his majesty's government; that they contained reflections upon the legislature, and the most distinguished persons in the colony, and tended to raise sedition and tumult. They likewise voted, that said papers and ballads should be burnt by the common hangman.

The attorney general afterwards filed an information against Zenger for these libels, upon which he was acquitted, after having lain in prison eight months. His acquittal was generally satisfactory.

Sec. xiv. Notwithstanding the favorable circumstances, under which Crosby commenced his administration, it became, during the latter part, extremely unpopular, and experienced a violent and powerful opposition.

The long continuance of the assembly without a re-election afforded just ground for complaint. This body repeatedly petitioned the governor to be dissolved, so as to enable

---

*Give some account of Zenger's publications.—Of the measures of the governor and council.*

Sec. xiv. What can you say of the latter part of Crosby's administration?—What afforded ground for complaint?

its constituents to signify, by the elective franchise, their opinion of the measures it had pursued.

The governor, who was well aware, that a new assembly would be less conformable to his views, refused to dissolve them, and, resisting every effort for a re-election, continued them through the whole of his administration.

Among the last acts of Gov. Crosby, was his declaring Rip Van Dam, Esq. suspended from his seat, as counsellor of the province. Van Dam was extremely obnoxious to the governor, and upon the governor's demise, being senior counsellor, would have again succeeded to the government, as president of the colony.

SEC. xv. Governor Crosby died on the 7th of March, 1736.

No governor commenced an administration with better prospects, and greater popularity; or endeavored less to retain the confidence and respect of the people. With high opinions of prerogative, and decided hostility to free and equal legislation, he became at length odious to the colony, and many of his best friends deserted him.

Yet his amiable qualities must not be forgotten. He was affable and courteous in his deportment; honest and sincere in his private transactions. Though not possessed of talents, either splendid or great; he was attentive to the concerns of the colony, and to the fair and impartial administration of justice.

SEC. xvi. 1736. After the death of Gov. Crosby, the council were immediately convened, and George Clarke, the senior counsellor, next after Rip Van Dam, was declared president, and assumed the government.

---

*Why did the governor refuse to dissolve the assembly? — Why was Van Dam suspended?*

SEC. xv. How was Crosby's administration terminated?

*What can you say of his character?*

SEC. xvi. Who assumed the government?

A powerful party was, however, formed in favor of Mr Van Dam, and his suspension from the council was, by many, declared to be arbitrary and illegal.

The council, who were almost unanimous in the support of Mr Clarke, voted, that provision should be made against any disturbances, that might ensue. Orders were issued, forbidding any person to recognise the pretensions of Mr Van Dam. A large quantity of gunpowder was directed to be procured, and to be placed in the fort for defence.

Mr Van Dam was not deterred by the menacing attitude of affairs, but proceeded to call the council, and assumed the title of commander in chief, and president of the colony. He appointed several of the chartered officers of the city, and was about to exercise other powers incident to the office he had assumed.

SEC. xvii. In the midst of this contention, and by the advice of the council, Mr Clarke convened the assembly, by whom he was recognised as president of the colony. On the 30th of October, he received from England the commission of lieutenant governor, which was published with the usual solemnities. This event put an end to the claims of Mr Van Dam.

In his address to the assembly, Mr Clarke alluded to the unhappy divisions, which had arisen in the colony, and strongly recommended the legislature to provide for its defence, safety, and prosperity. He directed their attention to the deficiencies in the revenue, and the importance of ship building. He requested the house to provide for the finishing of fortifications already commenced, particularly Fort Hunter, which he represented to be in a ruinous condition, and the establishment at Oswego, which was in want of repairs.

---

Who else made pretensions to it ?

*Of whom were the council in favor ? — What vote did they pass ?*  
*— What measures did Van Dam take ?*

xvii. What put an end to his claims ?

*What can you say of the lieutenant governor's address ?*

SEC. XVIII. The assembly proceeded to act on the subjects recommended, but, in their appropriations, expressly limited the revenue to be raised to the specific deficiencies reported to the house. The lieutenant governor, wishing to have the direction of the revenue, took offence at these limitations, and dissolved the assembly.

At the new elections, the people were much divided, and great exertions were made by the contending parties for success. The popular party were however triumphant. The new assembly was more decidedly opposed to the views of the lieutenant governor, than the old, and their controversies continued to embroil the colony during the whole of his administration.

In these contests the assembly were generally successful. In their second session, 1737, the house departed from their accustomed mode of proceeding, and, instead of voting to take the governor's speech into consideration, voted, that his honor, the lieutenant governor, be addressed. This address was a bold and decided expose of their sentiments, and sufficiently evinces the proud and unbroken spirit of the colonists, incapable of being awed or soothed into submission by the arts or power of their rulers. Both in style and matter, it is a remarkable production, and highly honorable to the times in which it was formed.

On the subject of revenue, the house adopted the following energetic language. "We therefore beg leave to be plain with your honor, and hope you will not take it amiss, when we tell you, that you are not to expect, that we either will raise sums unfit to be raised, or put what we

---

xviii. What can you say of the assembly?—What was the character of the new assembly?

*What is said of these contests?—What vote was passed in 1737?—Give some account of this address.*

shall raise into the power of a governor to misapply, if we can prevent it ; nor shall we make up any other deficiencies, than what we conceive are fit and just to be paid, or continue what support or revenue we shall raise for any longer time than one year, nor do we think it convenient to do even that, until such laws are passed, as we conceive necessary for the safety of the inhabitants of this colony, who have reposed a trust in us for that only purpose, and which we are sure you will think it reasonable, we should act agreeable to, and by the grace of God, we shall endeavor not to deceive them."

The character of the assembly, at this period, for firmness, in what it deemed the essential interests of the colony, cannot be disputed. The legislature, which had previously been mostly under the control of the governors, now began to perceive its importance in the scale of government. It possessed the germe of that independence and freedom, which afterwards ripened and displayed itself in securing the liberties of our country. It felt the dignity due to its own character, and neither ministerial smiles nor frowns could sway it from the path of duty.

In 1738, Capt. Norris, of the ship *Tartar*, then lying in the harbor of New York, made application to the mayor for liberty to impress thirty seamen to man his vessel. The governor and council ordered the mayor to cause the impressment to be made. The mayor peremptorily refused to obey the order, and the governor and council prudently declined taking any measures to compel obedience.

In 1741, the negroes formed a plot to burn the city. One hundred and fiftyfour were committed to prison, of whom fourteen were burnt at the stake, eighteen hanged, seventyone transported, and the remainder pardoned or discharged for want of proof.

Twenty white persons were committed, of whom two only were executed. The city of New York contained, at this time, twelve thousand souls, of whom, one sixth were slaves.

---

*What is said of the legislature at this period?*

*What application was made to the Mayor of New York?—*

*What was the result of this application?—Give some account of the plot in 1741.*

SEC. XIX. Governor Clarke closed his administration in September, 1743. Like that of his predecessor, it was distinguished by a strict and pertinacious adherence to prerogative, and presents little else, than an arduous and continued struggle for ascendancy between the governor and the assembly, supported by their respective partisans.

With few exceptions, he evinced a strong desire to conciliate the affections of the people, and, apart from his notions of monarchy he contributed much to the prosperity of the colony. His constant attention to the promotion of trade and commerce entitled him to our applause.

---

XIX. When did lieutenant governor Clarke close his administration ?  
—What can you say of it ?

*For what was he entitled to applause ?*

## CHAP. VIII.

## FROM 1743, TO 1760.

*George Clinton appointed Governor. War with France. Expedition against Louisburg. Incursions of the French and Indians. Operations of the war in 1746. Capture of the French fleet. Indian depredations. Termination of the war. Osborne appointed Governor, dies, and is succeeded by Delancey. Hostilities again commenced with the French. Colonial Convention. Hardy appointed Governor. Colonies prosecute the war.*

SEC. I. 1743. His excellency, George Clinton, was appointed to supersede Mr Clarke, as governor of the colony. He arrived on the 23d of September, and assumed the administration of the government.

The arrival of Governor Clinton was highly gratifying to the feelings of the colonists. The assembly was, according to custom, dissolved, and a new one elected. In addressing them, the language of the governor was mild and unassuming. Their reply was complimentary, and passed over in silence the former subjects of controversy between the executive and the assembly.

---

1. Who succeeded Mr Clarke?—What is said of his arrival?

Sec. II. 1744. War was declared between France and England, and great preparations were made on both sides for its prosecution. A similar spirit pervaded their respective colonies in America. Large appropriations were made by the assembly of New York, for putting the country in a posture of defence.

Sec. III. In 1745, the English colonies united in forming an expedition against *Louisburg*, the capital of Cape Breton Island, which was entrusted to the command of Sir William Pepperell. This important fortress was surrendered by the French in June. Five thousand pounds were voted by the assembly of New York for the promotion of this enterprise.

The troops destined for this expedition, mostly from New England, were embarked at Canso, and the fleet, under General Pepperell and Commodore Warren, arrived in Chapearogue bay, on the 13th of April. The enemy were, until this moment, in profound ignorance that any attack was meditated against them.

"The sight of the transports gave the alarm to the French, and a detachment was sent to oppose the landing of the troops. But while the general diverted the attention of the enemy by a feint at one place, he was landing his men at another.

The next morning, four hundred of the English marched round the hills to the northeast harbor, setting fire to all the houses and stores, till they came within a mile of the royal battery. The conflagration of the stores, in which was a considerable quantity of tar, concealed the

---

II. When, and with whom was war declared?—What measures were taken by the assembly?

III. What expedition was undertaken by the colonies?—What was its success?

*Give some account of it.*

English troops, at the same time, that it increased the alarm of the French so greatly, that they precipitately abandoned the royal battery. Upon their flight the English took possession of it, and by means of a well directed fire from it, seriously damaged the town.

The main body of the army now commenced the siege. For fourteen nights they were occupied in drawing cannon towards the town, over a morass, in which oxen and horses could not be used. Incredible was the toil; but what could not men accomplish, who had been accustomed to draw the pines of the forest for masts? By the twentieth of May several fascine batteries had been erected, one of which mounted five fortytwo pounders. On opening these batteries, they did great execution.

In the meantime Commodore Warren captured the *Vigilant*, a French ship of seventyfour guns, and with her five hundred and sixty men, together with great quantities of military stores. This capture was of great consequence, as it not only increased the English force and added to their military supplies, but as it seriously lessened the strength of the enemy. Shortly after this capture, the number of the English fleet was considerably augmented by the arrival of several men of war. A combined attack by sea and land was now determined on, and fixed for the eighteenth of June.

Previously to the arrival of this additional naval force, much had been accomplished towards the reduction of the place. The inland battery had been silenced; the western gate of the town was beaten down, and a breach effected in the wall; the circular battery of sixteen guns was nearly ruined, and the western flank of the king's bastion was nearly demolished.

Such being the injured state of the works, and perceiving preparations making for a joint assault, to sustain which little prospect remained, on the 15th the enemy desired a cessation of hostilities, and on the 17th of June, after a siege of forty-nine days, the city of Louisburg, and the island of Cape Breton, were surrendered to his Britannic majesty.

Thus successfully terminated a daring expedition, which had been undertaken without the knowledge of the mother country. The acquisition of the fortress of Louis-

burg was as useful and important to the colonies, and to the British empire, as its reduction was surprising to that empire and mortifying to the court of France.

Besides the stores and prizes which fell into the hands of the English, which were estimated at little less than a million sterling, security was given to the colonies in their fisheries; Nova Scotia was preserved, and the trade and fisheries of France nearly ruined.”\*

SEC. IV. During the operations at Louisburg, intelligence was received at New York, that 1500 French, and 100 Indians intended to surprise the English settlements near the mouth of the St. Lawrence, and on their return to attack Oswego.

An attempt was made by Col. Schuyler and Major Collins to erect block houses at Saratoga, but was frustrated by the great numbers of the enemy’s Indians, who were constantly on the watch, and cutting off supplies and troops. The inhabitants of Albany and the adjacent country became alarmed for their safety; and murders and robberies were frequently committed by the Indians within a few miles of the city.

A draft of 200 men was made for the relief of Albany and Schenectady. The town of Hosick was deserted by its inhabitants, and towards the close of the year the settlements at Saratoga were almost literally depopulated.

The houses and fort were burnt, and many shocking barbarities committed by the Indians,

\* Goodrich.

---

IV. What intelligence was received during this expedition?—What attempts were made?—Why were the inhabitants of Albany alarmed?—What is said of the settlements at Hosick and Saratoga?

who, in accordance with their ancient mode of warfare, scalped the men, women, and children, who fell into their hands. The New England colonies experienced similar incursions.

SEC. v. 1746. The success of the expedition to Cape Breton led the colonies to project the conquest of Canada.

The plan was, that a squadron, under the command of admiral Warren, and a body of land forces under Gen. St. Clair, should be sent from England ; that the troops, raised from the New England colonies, should join the British fleet and army at Louisburg, and proceed up the river St. Lawrence ; and, that those of New York, and other colonies at the south, should be collected at Albany, and march against Crown Point and Montreal.

The colonies, pleased with the measure, furnished their quotas of men ; but no armament arrived from England ; and it was resolved to employ the forces in an attempt against the French at Crown Point. Governor Clinton engaged the assistance of the Six Nations.

In the midst of these preparations, intelligence was received, that a large fleet from France had arrived at Nova Scotia, under the command of the duke D'Anville. It consisted of forty ships of war, exclusive of transports ; and brought over about four thousand regular troops, with supplies of military stores.

---

Of the cruelty of the Indians ?

What was projected by the colonies in 1746?—What was the plan of operations ?

SEC. VI. The expedition against Canada was abandoned; and vigorous measures taken for the defence of the colonies. Their apprehensions were soon after relieved by intelligence of the misfortunes of the enemy.

The French fleet had sustained much damage by storms, and great loss by shipwrecks. Sickness prevailed among their troops. D'Anville was seized with an apoplectic fit, and suddenly expired. The remainder of the squadron was overtaken by a severe tempest off Cape Sable, and the few ships, that escaped destruction, returned singly to France.

Considerable difference of opinion had for some time existed between the governor and the assembly. Much warmth of feeling was manifested, and this increasing dissension was productive of serious inconvenience to the warlike operations of the colony.

The governor charged the house with culpable neglect in providing for the defence of the colony. This was highly resented by the assembly, who, in return, charged the governor with fraud and mismanagement in the administration of the government. The embarrassed state of the finances, arising from the expenses of the war, and the predatory excursions of the Indians, imposed a heavy burthen upon the inhabitants.

SEC. VII. 1747. The French fitted out another expedition consisting of six ships of the line, six frigates, and four armed East India ships, with twenty-nine merchant ships and

---

VI. What occasioned the failure of the enterprise?—Give some account of the misfortunes, that attended the French.

*What embarrassed the warlike operations of the colony?*—  
*With what did the governor charge the assembly?*—*With what did they charge the governor?*

VII. What expedition was fitted out in 1747?

transports. They were overtaken by a superior British squadron under admirals Anson and Warren, and, after a sanguinary engagement, were compelled to surrender.

During this season, Saratoga again experienced an incursion of the French and Indians. The village, containing thirty families, was destroyed, and the inhabitants massacred. Towards the close of this year, a general inactivity characterized the measures of the belligerent powers. Both parties, mutually exhausted, appeared verging towards a general pacification.

SEC. VIII. 1748. In April the preliminaries were signed at Aix la Chapelle, and a cessation of hostilities was soon after proclaimed. The definitive treaty was completed on the seventh of October. Prisoners on both sides were to be released without ransom, and all conquests to be restored.

After the close of the war, the colony enjoyed, for several years, a period of general tranquillity. Released from the apprehensions of hostile irruptions, the inhabitants vigorously addressed themselves to the arts of peace; and by industry, economy, and enterprise, they in great measure repaired the losses sustained by the preceding war. The increase of commerce, and the rapid extension of their settlements evince the success that attended their exertions.

---

By whom was it captured?—What occurred at Saratoga?—What is said of the measures of the belligerent powers?

VIII. What conditions of the treaty in 1748 are mentioned?—What was the state of the colony for some years after?

In 1750, the entries at New York were two hundred and thirtytwo, and the clearances two hundred and eightysix. Above six thousand tons of provisions, chiefly flour, were exported, besides large quantities of grain.

SEC. IX. 1753. Governor Clinton having resigned, Sir Danvers Osborne was appointed to succeed him, as governor of the colony. He took his seat at the council board on the 10th of October, and died on the 12th. James Delancey, who had been appointed lieutenant governor by one of the last acts of governor Clinton, assumed the administration of the government.

The tragical fate of governor Osborne deserves a more particular notice. He put an end to his existence by hanging himself, in the garden of Mr Murray, with whom he resided. The act was supposed to have been perpetrated under the influence of insanity, occasioned by embarrassments, which, he apprehended, would attend the exercise of his commission.

Mr Smith, after detailing the particulars relative to this event, observes, "A point of honor and duty, in a foreseen difficulty to reconcile his conduct with his Majesty's instructions, very probably, gave his heart a fatal stab, and produced that terrible disorder in his mind, which occasioned his laying violent hands upon himself."

SEC. X. The colony had scarcely begun to realize the benefits of peace, when they were again menaced with foreign war. By the treaty of Aix la Chapelle, the controversy, between the two crowns relative to their claims in America, was referred to commissioners to be

---

ix. Who succeeded governor Clinton?—By whom was he succeeded?

*Give some account of the death of governor Osborne.—What probably occasioned it?*

x. What led to the renewal of hostilities with the French?

appointed by the two sovereigns, for that purpose. These commissioners met the preceding year at Paris; and, after making laborious efforts to establish the claims of their respective sovereigns, were unable to come to any agreement.

The settlements of the English and French colonies were, in the mean time, approximating nearer to each other, and their respective leaders were anxious to secure the most eligible situations for trading houses and forts. Mutual complaints of aggression were soon followed by acts of open hostility. The British ministry, on being made acquainted with the claims of the French, without a formal declaration of war, directed the colonies to resist their encroachments, by force of arms.

SEC. XI. 1754. A convention of delegates from New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, Pennsylvania and Maryland, with the lieutenant governor and council of New York, was held at Albany, for the purpose of uniting upon some scheme, for the common defence of the colonies.

A plan of union was adopted, in several of its features resembling the present constitution of the United States; but it had the singular fortune, to be rejected by the Provincial Assemblies, because it gave too much power to the crown, and at the same time, to be rejected

---

What instructions did the British ministry give the colonies?

XI. Where, and for what purpose was a convention held in 1754?

—What plan was adopted? —What was the result?

by the crown, because it gave too much power to the people.

“According to this plan, a grand council was to be formed of members chosen by the provincial assemblies, and sent from all the colonies; which council, with a governor general, appointed by the crown, and having a negative voice, should be empowered to make general laws, to raise money in all the colonies for their defence, to call forth troops, regulate trade, lay duties, &c. &c.”

“The plan, thus matured, was approved and signed, on the fourth of July, the day that Washington surrendered Fort Necessity, and twenty two years before the declaration of Independence, by all the delegates, excepting those from Connecticut, who objected to the negative voice of the governor general.”

“One circumstance, in the history of this plan, deserves here to be recorded, as evincing the dawning spirit of the revolution. Although the plan was rejected by the provincial assemblies, they declared, without reserve, that if it were adopted, they would undertake to defend themselves from the French, without any assistance from Great Britain. They required, but to be left to employ their supplies in their own way, to effect their security and predominance.”

SEC. XII. 1755. Sir Charles Hardy arrived in September with the commission of governor, which was published with the usual solemnities. During his residence in the colony, he appears to have been principally under the influence of Delancey, to whom, on leaving, he committed the government. In 1757, he embarked with a command in the expedition against Louisburg; and Delancey resumed the administration, as lieutenant governor.

---

*Give some account of this plan.*

XII. Who was appointed governor in 1755?—What is said of him?—What were the most important acts of the government at his time?

The raising of revenue for defraying the expenses of the civil list, and of supplies for the defence of the country, and the prosecution of the war in common with the other colonies, comprised, during this period the most important acts of government. The city of New York contained at this time two thousand houses, and about twelve thousand inhabitants.

SEC. XIII. Early in the spring of 1755, the colonies made preparations for vigorous exertions against the enemy. An expedition was planned against the French in Nova Scotia ; *another* against the French on the Ohio ; a *third* against Crown Point ; and a *fourth* against Niagara.

SEC. XIV. The first expedition resulted in the entire reduction of Nova Scotia, and the acquisition of large quantities of provisions and military stores. That against the French on the Ohio, owing to the imprudence of Gen. Braddock, the commander, was peculiarly unfortunate. When within seven miles of Fort du Quesne,\* they were surprised by a body of French and Indians, and, after an action of three hours, Braddock, under whom five horses had been killed, was mortally wounded, and his troops defeated.

When within twelve or fourteen miles of Fort du Quesne, Braddock was advised by his officers to proceed with caution ; and was earnestly entreated by Col. Washington, his aid, to permit him to precede the army and guard against surprise.

\* Now Pittsburg.

XIII. What expeditions were planned in 1755 ?

XIV. What success attended the expedition against Nova Scotia ?  
—Against the French on the Ohio ?

"Had he attended to those precautions he would not have been thus ambuscaded ; or had he wisely retreated from a concealed enemy, and scoured the thicket with his cannon, the melancholy catastrophe might have been avoided. But, obstinately riveted to the spot on which he was first attacked, he vainly continued his attempt to form his men in regular order, although, by this means, a surer prey to the enemy, until being himself wounded, he could no longer be necessary to the destruction of human life.

A remarkable fact in the history of this affair remains to be told. Gen. Braddock held the *provincial* troops in great contempt. Consequently, he kept the Virginians, and other provincials, who were in the action, in the rear. Yet, although equally exposed with the rest, far from being affected with the fears that disordered the regular troops, they stood firm and unbroken, and, under Colonel Washington, covered the retreat of the regulars, and saved them from total destruction.

The retreat of the army, after Braddock was wounded, was precipitate. No pause was made until the rear division was met. This division on its junction with the other, was seized with the same spirit of flight with the retreating, and both divisions proceeded to Fort Cumberland, a distance of nearly one hundred and twenty miles from the place of action.

Had the troops, even here, recovered their spirits and returned, success might still have crowned the expedition. At least, the army might have rendered the most important service to the cause, by preventing the devastations and inhuman murders, perpetrated by the French and Indians, during the summer, on the western borders of Virginia and Pennsylvania. But, instead of adopting a course so salutary and important, Col. Dunbar, leaving the sick and wounded at Cumberland, marched with his troops to Philadelphia."\*

SEC. xv. The expedition against Crown Point, commanded by general William Johnson, though unsuccessful in its main object,

\* Goodrich.

---

*Give some account of Braddock's defeat.*

xv. What can you say of the expedition against Crown Point ? —

served in some measure to dispel the gloom, which followed the defeat of Braddock.

Johnson encamped, the latter part of August at the south end of Lake George, where he was informed, that a body of the enemy, two thousand in number, had landed at South bay under the command of Baron Dieskau, and were marching towards Fort Edward, for the purpose of destroying the provisions and military stores at that place. A party of twelve hundred men under Col. Williams were detached to intercept them, but were unfortunately surprised by Dieskau, who was lying in ambush, and, after a signal slaughter, were compelled to retreat. Col Williams, and Hendrick, a renowned Mohawk chief, with many other officers, were killed.

Dieskau, with his troops, soon appeared before the encampment of Johnson, and commenced a spirited attack. They were received with great intrepidity, and the cannon and musquetry did such execution among their ranks, that the enemy were forced to retire in confusion. Dieskau, after being severely wounded, fell into the hands of the English. The loss of the French was about eight hundred ; that of the English did not exceed two hundred.

"At the time it was meditated to send a detachment under Col. Williams, to intercept Dieskau, the number of men proposed was mentioned to Hendrick, the Mohawk chief, and his opinion asked. He replied, " If they are to fight, they are too few. If they are to be killed, they

---

Give an account of the engagement with Dieskau.  
*What is related of Hendrick ?*

are too many." The number was accordingly increased. Gen. Johnson proposed also to divide the detachment into three parties. Upon this Hendrick took three sticks, and putting them together, said to him, "Put these together, and you cannot break them; take them one by one, and you will break them easily." The hint succeeded, and Hendrick's sticks saved many of the party, and probably the whole army from destruction.\*

"Early in the action, Gen. Johnson was wounded, and Gen. Lyman succeeded to the command, which he held through the day. To this gentleman's gallant exertions, the success of the day, under Providence, was chiefly to be ascribed. Yet it is remarkable, that Gen. Johnson made no mention of Gen. Lyman in his official letter, announcing the intelligence of the victory. The ambition of Johnson was too great, and his avarice too greedy, to acknowledge the merits of a rival. Gen. Johnson was created a baronet, and parliament voted him five thousand pounds sterling, in consideration of his success. The reward of Gen. Lyman was the esteem and honor of the people among whom he lived.

"Among the wounded of the French, as already stated, was the Baron Dieskau. He had received a ball through his leg, and being unable to follow his retreating army, was found by an English soldier, resting upon the stump of a tree, with scarcely an attendant. Dieskau, apprehensive for his safety, was feeling for his watch, in order to give it to the soldier, when the man, suspecting that he was feeling for a pistol, levelled his gun, and wounded him in the hips. He was carried to the camp, and treated with great kindness. From the camp he was taken to Albany and New York, whence, some time after, he sailed for England, where he died. He was a superior officer, possessed of honorable feelings, and adorned with highly polished manners. One stain, however, attaches to his character. Before his engagement with Col. Williams's corps, he gave orders to his troops neither to give nor take quarter."

\* *Dwight's Travels.*

SEC. XVI. Governor Shirley of Massachusetts took the command of the expedition against Niagara. He advanced to Oswego, where, being poorly supplied with provisions, and the rainy season approaching, the expedition was abandoned, and the troops returned to Albany.

---

## CHAP. IX.

## CONTINUATION OF THE FRENCH WAR.

*Formal declaration of war. Campaign of 1756, and capture of Oswego. Campaign of 1757, and capture of Fort William Henry. Expedition against Ticonderoga. Capture of Fort Frontenac. Campaign of 1759. Surrender of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. Capture of Niagara. Wolfe's expedition against Quebec. War terminated in 1760 by the entire conquest of Canada.*

SEC. I. 1756. Hostilities had thus far been prosecuted by the colonies without any formal declaration of war on the part of the mother country. On the 18th of May, the present year, war was formally declared by Great Britain, and this declaration soon after reciprocated by a similar declaration on the part of France.

---

xvi. What can you say of the expedition against Niagara?

1. When was war formally declared?

In the plan of operations for the present year, Niagara and Crown Point, two strong holds of great importance, then in the possession of the enemy, were constituted the principal points of attack.

SEC. II. General Abercrombie was appointed to command, until the arrival of the earl of Loudon, who was to be commander in chief of all his majesty's forces in America. Owing to the improvidence of Abercrombie, nothing was effected by the English. The campaign was unfortunately signalized by the capture of Oswego, which was surrendered to the French in August.

The Marquis de Montcalm, commander of the French troops in Canada, collected a force of thirteen hundred regulars, seventeen hundred Canadians, with a considerable number of Indians, and proceeded from Fort Frontenac by the way of lake Ontario. On his arrival at Oswego, he stationed two large armed vessels to block up the place by water, and posted a strong body of Canadians and Indians to cut off all communication with Albany. Having brought up his artillery and stores, on the twelfth of August, he opened his trenches before Fort Ontario. The fortifications were in no condition to make a defence against artillery, or regular approaches; and on the fourteenth, Colonel Mercer having been killed by a cannon ball the day previous, the garrison proposed a capitulation.

By the terms of capitulation, they were to surrender prisoners of war, to be exempted from plunder, treated with humanity, and conducted to Montreal. These terms were however most shamefully violated by the French. Several of the British officers and soldiers were insulted, robbed, and massacred by the Indians. Most of the sick

---

What were the principal points of attack?

II. Who was appointed to the command?—What is said of the campaign the present year?

Give some account of the capture of Oswego.—Of the cruelties committed.

were barbarously scalped in the hospital ; and to finish the scene of falsehood and cruelty, the French general delivered up to the Indians above twenty of the garrison, in lieu of the same number they had lost during the siege, who were probably put to death according to the Indian custom of torturing and burning.

Montcalm, having accomplished his object with very inconsiderable loss, demolished the two forts at Oswego, and returned with his army to Fort Frontenac. By this enterprise, the enemy obtained the entire command of lakes Ontario and Erie, and of the whole country of the Five Nations. About fifteen hundred men were made prisoners, and one hundred and twenty pieces of cannon were taken, with fourteen mortars, two sloops of war, and two hundred boats and batteaux.

SEC. III. The campaign of 1757 was equally unsuccessful on the part of the English. Montcalm made a descent on Fort William Henry, situated on the southern shore of Lake George. The garrison of the Fort consisted of three thousand men. It was besieged by Montcalm with a force of nine thousand ; and after a gallant defence of six days, was compelled to surrender, giving to the French the command of the lake, and the western frontier.

“ The spirited and protracted defence of the fort, against such numbers, reflects the highest honor upon its brave commander, Col. Munroe. Six days was the enemy kept at bay, with unabated resolution, in full expectation of assistance from Gen. Webb, who lay at Fort Edward, only fifteen miles distant, with an army of four thousand men.

“ The character of Gen. Webb continues sullied by his unpardonable indifference to the perilous situation of his brethren in arms, at Fort William Henry. It deserves to be known that Sir William Johnson, after very importu-

---

III. What is said of the campaign of 1757 ? — Of the descent on Fort William Henry ?

nate solicitations, obtained leave of Gen. Webb to march with as many as would volunteer in the service, to the relief of Munroe.

"At the beat of the drums, the provincials, almost to a man, sallied forth, and were soon ready and eager for the march. After being under arms almost all day, what were their feelings when Sir William, returning from head-quarters, informed them that Gen. Webb had forbidden them to march!

"The soldiers were inexpressibly mortified and enraged,—and their commander did himself no common honor in the tears he shed, as he turned from his troops, and retired to his tent.

"The defence of Fort William Henry was so gallant, that Col. Munroe, with his troops, was admitted to an honorable capitulation. The capitulation, however, was most shamefully broken. While the troops were marching out at the gate of the fort, the Indians attached to Montcalm's party dragged the men from their ranks, and with all the inhumanity of savage feeling, plundered them of their baggage, and butchered them in cold blood. Out of a New Hampshire corps of two hundred, eighty were missing."\*

Major Putnam was dispatched, the day after this awful tragedy, with his rangers to watch the motions of the enemy, and gives the following account. He arrived at the shore of Lake George, while the enemy were in the act of retiring. The prospect was horrid beyond description. The fort was demolished, the barracks, out houses and buildings were one heap of ruins; the cannon, stores, boats and vessels were carried away. The fires were still burning, the smoke and stench offensive and suffocating. The place was covered with fragments of human skulls and bones; and carcases half consumed were still frying and broiling in the decaying fires. Dead bodies, mangled, with scalping knives and tomahawks in all the wantonness of Indian fierceness and barbarity, were everywhere to be seen.

More than one hundred women, inhumanly stabbed

\* *Goodrich.*

---

*Give some account of its capture.—Of the cruelties of the Indians.*

and butchered, lay naked on the ground, with their bowels torn out, and still weltering in their gore. In some, their throats were cut, in others, their brains were oozing out, where the hatchet had cleaved their heads; and in others, the hair and scalp had been torn off, and nothing was to be seen, but the bloody skull. Devastation, barbarity, and horror, everywhere appeared; and presented a spectacle too diabolical and awful to be endured or delineated.\*

SEC. IV. 1758. The celebrated Pitt, Lord Chatham, was now placed at the head of the British ministry, and gave a new tone to their measures, and a fresh impulse to the spirit of the colonies, which had been depressed by a series of ill conducted and unfortunate expeditions. The tide of success was now turned in favor of the English, and continued, with few exceptions, until the whole of Canada was subjected to their arms.

SEC. V. The plan of the campaign for the present year comprehended three expeditions; viz. against Louisburg, Ticonderoga, and Fort du Quesne. The first was completely successful. Louisburg, after an obstinate resistance, was surrendered to General Amherst on the 26th of July, and, with it, five thousand seven hundred and thirtyseven prisoners of war, with military stores.

The command of the expedition against Louisburg was assigned to Major General Amherst, assisted by Brigadier

\* Putman's Life.

---

iv. What change took place in the British ministry in 1758?—What effect did this produce on the success of the English?

v. What was the plan of operations for the present year?—What is said of the expedition against Louisburg?

*Give some account of it.*

Generals Wolfe, Whittemore, and Lawrence. The naval force under admiral Boscawen arrived at Halifax in May, the whole armament consisting of one hundred and fifty-seven sail. The fleet appeared in the vicinity of Louisburg on the 2d of June, and on the 8th the troops under the direction of General Wolfe effected a landing, and immediately invested the city.

The garrison of Louisburg consisted of two thousand five hundred regular troops, three hundred militia, and a considerable number of Canadians and Indians, under the command of chevalier Drucour. The harbor was defended by six ships of the line, and five frigates. Amherst advanced upon the place with great caution, and Wolfe conducted with all that gallantry and discretion which have since immortalized his name. Under these commanders, the siege was prosecuted with so much vigilance and energy, that the French ships were soon destroyed, and the garrison compelled to surrender.

SEC. VI. Lord Loudon having returned to England, General Abercrombie, now commander in chief in America, with an army of sixteen thousand men, passed Lake George, and appeared before Ticonderoga. Without waiting for the arrival of his artillery, he commenced an immediate attack, which was obstinately maintained for more than four hours, when he was compelled to retire with the loss of near two thousand killed and wounded.

The forces under Abercrombie amounted to near seven thousand regulars, and ten thousand provincial troops. These, with a fine train of artillery, and military stores, were embarked on Lake George, in nine hundred batteaux and one hundred and thirtyone boats. Their passage across the lake is thus elegantly described by Dr Dwight.

“The morning was remarkably bright and beautiful; and the fleet moved with exact regularity to the sound of

---

VI. What is said the expedition against Ticonderoga?  
Give some account of this expedition.

fine martial music. The ensigns waved and glittered in the sunbeams, and the anticipation of future triumph shone in every eye. Above, beneath, around, the scenery was that of enchantment. Rarely has the sun, since that luminary was first lighted up in the heavens, dawned on such a complication of beauty and magnificence."

The splendor of this parade forms, however, a melancholy contrast with the defeat, which was about to ensue. After landing, Abercrombie divided his force into three columns, and hastily advanced toward the enemy. The columns were thrown into disorder by the thick woods, through which they had to pass; and just as they were approaching the enemy's works, became entangled in an abattis. Desperate attempts were made to force a passage, during which they were constantly exposed to a most fatal and destructive fire from the enemy, who, being covered by their entrenchments, suffered comparatively little. Every effort proving unsuccessful, Abercrombie withdrew his forces, and precipitately retired to his former encampment on Lake George.

SEC. VII. Abercrombie, soon after his unfortunate expedition against Ticonderoga, sent Col. Bradstreet, with a detachment of three thousand men, against Fort Frontenac, on the northwest side of the outlet of Lake Ontario. Bradstreet sailed down the Ontario, landed within a mile of the fort, opened his batteries, and in two days compelled this important fortress to surrender. Nine armed vessels, large quantities of cannon and military stores, fell into the hands of the English. Fort Du Quesne was peaceably surrendered to Gen. Forbes in November.

---

VII. What expedition was soon after undertaken?—What success attended it?—What other fortress surrendered?

SEC. VIII. The object of the campaign of 1759 was no less, than the entire conquest of Canada. The contemplated points of attack were Ticonderoga, Crown Point, Niagara, and Quebec.

Gen. Amherst, who had succeeded Abercrombie as commander in chief, appeared before Ticonderoga on the 22d of July, and soon after took possession of the fortress. After repairing the works, he proceeded to Crown Point, which was surrendered without opposition. The second division of the army, under Gen. Prideaux, appeared before Niagara on the 6th of July. The place was immediately invested; and, on the 24th, a general battle took place, which decided the fate of that post, and transferred it into the hands of the English.

Gen. Prideaux was killed by the bursting of a cohorn, four days previous to this battle. Sir William Johnson succeeded to the command, and successfully executed the plans of his predecessor.

SEC. IX. While the British were pursuing their victorious career in Upper Canada, Gen. Wolfe, with an army of eight thousand men, appeared before Quebec. On the 13th of September, a severe battle was fought between the English, under Wolfe, and the French, under Montcalm, in which both these brave commanders fell. Victory decided in favor of the English, and the city, five days after, capitulated.

---

VIII. What was the object of the campaign of 1759? — What were the points of attack? — Who succeeded Abercrombie? — Give some account of his operations. — Of the operations against Niagara.

IX. Who appeared before Quebec? — What can you say of the battle?

" Determined from the first to take the place, impregnable as it was accounted, the measures of Gen. Wolfe were singularly bold, and apparently repugnant to all the maxims of war. His attention was first drawn to point Levi, on the southern bank of the St Lawrence, upon which, after taking possession of it, he erected batteries. By means of these, he destroyed many houses, but from this point it was soon apparent that little impression could be made upon the fortifications of the town.

" Finding it impracticable thus to accomplish his purpose, Wolfe next decided on more daring measures. For the purpose of drawing Montcalm to a general battle, Wolfe, with his troops, crossed the river Montmorenci, and attacked the enemy in their entrenchments. Owing, however, to the grounding of some of the boats which conveyed the troops, a part of the detachment did not land so soon as the others. The corps that first landed, without waiting to form, rushed forward, impetuously, towards the enemy's entrenchments. But their courage proved their ruin. A close and well directed fire from the enemy cut them down in great numbers.

" Montcalm's party had now landed, and were drawn up on the beach in order. But it was near night, a thunder storm was approaching, and the tide was rapidly setting in. Fearing the consequences of delay, Wolfe ordered a retreat across the Montmorenci, and returned to his quarters on the Isle of Orleans. In this encounter, his loss amounted to near six hundred of the flower of his army.

" Disappointed thus far, and worn down with fatigue and watching, General Wolfe fell violently sick. Scarcely had he recovered, before he proceeded to put in execution a plan which had been matured on his sick bed. This was to proceed up the river—gain the heights of Abraham, and draw Montcalm to a general engagement.

" Accordingly, the troops were transported up the river, about nine miles. On the 12th of September, one hour

---

*What is said of the measures of Wolfe?—To what point was his attention first drawn?—What success attended his operations?—What was next attempted?—What was the result of this attempt?—What plan was next formed?—Give some account of the manner in which this was executed.*

after midnight, Wolfe and his troops left the ships, and in boats silently dropped down the current, intending to land a league above Cape Diamond, and there ascend the bank leading to the station he wished to gain. Owing, however, to the rapidity of the river, they fell below the intended place, and landed a mile, or a mile and a half, above the city. The operation was a critical one, as they had to navigate, in silence, down a rapid stream, and to find a right place for landing, which, amidst surrounding darkness, might be easily mistaken. Besides this, the shore was shelving, and the bank so steep and lofty, as scarcely to be ascended even without opposition from an enemy. Indeed the attempt was in the greatest danger of being defeated by an occurrence peculiarly interesting, as marking the very great delicacy of the transaction.

"One of the French sentinels, posted along the shore, as the English boats were descending, challenged them in the customary military language of the French. "*Qui vit?*" "*Who goes there?*" to which a captain in Frazer's regiment, who had served in Holland, and was familiar with the French language and customs, promptly replied, "*la France.*" The next question was still more embarrassing, for the sentinel demanded "*a quel regiment?*" "*to what regiment?*" The captain, who happened to know the name of a regiment which was up the river, with Bougainville, promptly rejoined, "*de la Reine,*" "*the Queen's.*" The soldier immediately replied, "*passe,*" for he concluded at once, that this was a French convoy of provisions, which, as the English had learned from some deserters, was expected to pass down the river to Quebec. The other sentinels were deceived in a similar manner; but one, less credulous than the rest, running down to the water's edge, called out "*Pour quois est ce que vous ne parlez plus haut?*" "*Why dont you speak louder?*" The same captain, with perfect self-command, replied, "*Tais-toi, nous serons entendus!*" "*Hush, we shall be overheard and discovered!*" The sentry, satisfied with this caution, retired, and the boats passed in safety.\* About an hour before day, the army began to ascend the precipice, the distance of one hundred and fifty or two hundred feet, al-

\* Silliman's Tour, from Smollet.

most perpendicular ascent, above which spread the plains of Abraham. By day-light, September 13th, this almost incredible enterprise had been effected—the desired station was attained, the army was formed, and ready to meet the enemy.

“To Montcalm, the intelligence that the English were occupying the heights of Abraham was most surprising. The impossibility of ascending the precipice he considered certain, and therefore had taken no measures to fortify its line. But no sooner was he informed of the position of the English army, than perceiving a battle no longer to be avoided, he prepared to fight. Between nine and ten o’clock, the two armies, about equal in numbers, met face to face.

“The battle now commenced. Inattentive to the fire of a body of Canadians and Indians, one thousand five hundred of whom Montcalm had stationed in the cornfields and bushes, Wolfe directed his troops to reserve their fire for the main body of the French, now rapidly advancing. On their approach within forty yards, the English opened their fire, and the destruction became immense.

“The French fought bravely, but their ranks became disordered, and, notwithstanding the repeated efforts of their officers to form them, and to renew the attack, they were so successfully pushed by the British bayonet, and hewn down by the Highland broadsword, that their discomfiture was complete.

“Daring the action, Montcalm was on the French left, and Wolfe on the English right, and here they both fell in the critical moment that decided the victory. Early in the battle, Wolfe received a ball in his wrist, but binding his handkerchief around it; he continued to encourage his men.—Shortly after, another ball penetrated his groin; but this wound, although much more severe, he concealed, and continued to urge on the contest, till a third bullet pierced his breast. He was now obliged, though reluctantly, to be carried to the rear of the line.

“Gen. Monckton succeeded to the command, but was immediately wounded, and conveyed away. In this criti-

---

—Of the engagement that ensued.—Of the death of Wolfe.

cal state of the action, the command devolved on Gen. Townshend. Gen. Montcalm, fighting in front of his battalion, received a mortal wound about the same time, and Gen. Jennezergus, his second in command, fell near his side.

"Wolfe died in the field before the battle was ended; but he lived long enough to know that the victory was his. While leaning on the shoulder of a lieutenant, who kneeled to support him, he was seized with the agonies of death: at this moment was heard the distant sound, 'They fly' — 'they fly.' The hero raised his drooping head, and eagerly asked, 'Who fly?' Being told that it was the French — 'Then,' he replied, 'I die happy,' and expired."\*

In the ensuing spring, 1760, the French made exertions to recover Quebec from the English. Their designs were, however, frustrated by the arrival of an English quadron with reinforcements, by which the French fleet was taken and destroyed.

SEC. x. On the 6th of September Generals Amherst and Murray, with a large body of troops, appeared before Montreal, the last fortress of importance now in possession of the French. On the 8th, Montreal, Detroit, Michilimackinac, and all other places within the government of Canada, were surrendered to his Britanic Majesty.

Three years after, a definitive treaty was ratified by the kings of England and France, by which, all Nova Scotia, Canada, the Isle of Cape Breton, and all other Islands in the gulf and river St Lawrence, were ceded to the British crown.

\* Goodrich.

---

x. What took place in September? — What treaty three years after?

## CHAP. X.

## FROM 1760 TO 1775.

*Prospects of the Colony. Controversy relative to the New Hampshire Grants. Opposition from the settlers. Stamp Act. Congress at New York. Disturbances occasioned by the Stamp Act. Stamp Act repealed. Assembly restrained. Further attempts to tax the Colonies. Controversy with the Grants becomes serious. Parties prevented from proceeding to hostilities by the controversy with Great Britain.*

SEC. I. The conquest of Canada had, for more than seventy years, been an object of solicitude with the colonies generally, but more especially with New York, which, from its local situation, was more imminently exposed to the depredations and ravages of the Indian tribes. The accomplishment of this object put a period to those hostile incursions, and gave, to the future prospects of the colony, the aspect of tranquillity, prosperity, rapid increase, and improvement, while the return of peace afforded an opportunity for repairing the embarrassed state of her finances, and augmenting her resources, which had been impoverished by a series of protracted and expensive wars.

---

1. What is said of the conquest of Canada?—Of the prospects of the colony?

SEC. II. Lieutenant governor Delancey died suddenly, on the 30th of July, and Cadwallader Colden assumed the government, as president of the council. He received the appointment of lieutenant governor in August, 1761. Robert Monckton was commissioned governor, and commenced his administration in October.

Soon after his appointment, Gov. Monckton embarked to take the command of an expedition against Martinique. The enterprise was successful, and, on the fourteenth of February, the French governor, M. de la Touche, delivered up the whole island to the English on capitulation. With Martinique fell Granada, St Lucia, St Vincent, and every other place possessed by the French in the extensive chain of the Carribbee Islands. Gov. Monckton returned to New York in June, 1762, but remained only a short time in the province. During his absence, the government was administered by Mr Colden, the lieutenant governor.

SEC. III. In 1763 commenced the celebrated controversy with New Hampshire, relative to boundaries. The controverted territory comprised the country situated between Connecticut river, and Lake Champlain ; and since known as Vermont.

No settlements, of any importance, had been made in this territory previous to 1760 ; and the subject of territorial limits had, consequently, never been examined, or called in question. The original charters of the colonies, owing to the imperfect surveys of the country, were extremely vague, indefinite, and often contradictory. A grant was made in 1664, and 1674, by Charles the second to his brother, the duke of York, containing, among othe<sup>r</sup>

---

II. How was the administration of Gov. Delancey terminated ?—Who assumed the command?—Who was the next governor?

*What can you say of his administration?*

III. What controversy commenced in 1763?—What did the controverted territory comprise?

*What is said of the settlements in this territory?—Of the original charters of the colonies?*

parts of America, "all the lands from the west side of Connecticut river to the east side of Delaware bay." No other grant of the contested territory had ever been made by any preceding, or subsequent charter, and it was consequently inferred, by the government of New York, that it fell within their jurisdiction.

This territory was, however, by many supposed to fall within the limits of New Hampshire, and that government, in 1760, and several succeeding years, made large grants of land, to settlers, west of Connecticut river. The settlements progressed with astonishing rapidity, and, in 1763, one hundred and thirtyeight townships had been granted by New Hampshire, extending as far west as the shore of Lake Champlain; and to what was esteemed twenty miles east of Hudson's river.

SEC. IV. To check the proceedings of New Hampshire, lieutenant governor Colden issued a proclamation, reciting the grants of the duke of York, asserting their validity, claiming the jurisdiction as far east as Connecticut river, and commanding the sheriff of Albany county to make return of all persons, who, under the New Hampshire Grants, had taken possession of lands west of the river.

A proclamation was soon after issued by the governor of New Hampshire, declaring the grant of the duke of York to be obsolete; that New Hampshire extended as far west as Massachusetts, and Connecticut, and that the grants made by New Hampshire would be confirmed, if the jurisdiction should be altered. He exhorted the settlers not to be intimidated, but to proceed in the cultivation of their lands; and required the civil officers to exercise

---

*From what did the government of New York infer that this territory fell within their jurisdiction?—What government made grants in this territory?—What is said of the settlements?—What was the extent of these grants?*

iv. *What was done to check these proceedings?*  
*What proclamation was made soon after?*

jurisdiction as far west as grants had been made, and to punish all disturbers of the peace.\*

SEC. v. Application was made to the crown, and a decision obtained in 1764, by which, the western bank of Connecticut river was declared to be the boundary line between the provinces of New Hampshire and New York. The government of New York proceeded to organize the new territory, and to exercise jurisdiction.

The new district was divided into four counties. The southwestern part was annexed to the county of Albany; and the northwestern part formed into a county by the name of Charlotte. East of the Green Mountains, two counties were formed: Gloucester on the north, and Cumberland on the south. In each of these counties, courts were regularly held. The grants of land, under New Hampshire, were declared illegal, and the settlers required to take out new charters from New York.

Some of the towns complied with the requisition, and purchased their lands the second time; but the greater part refused. Where it was not complied with, on the part of the grantees, new grants were made of their lands to such petitioners as would advance the fees which were demanded. Actions of ejectment were commenced in the courts at Albany against several of the ancient settlers. The decisions of the courts were in favor of the New York titles; but when the executive officers came to eject the inhabitants, they generally met with an avowed opposition from the possessors, and were not allowed to proceed in the execution of their offices.

When it was found that there was a combination for the avowed purpose of resisting the execution of the judgments of the courts, the militia were called out to support the

\* *Williams.*

---

v. What decision was made in 1764?—What was done by the government of New York?

*What was required of the settlers?—How was this complied with?—What actions were commenced?—What measures were taken by the settlers?—What measures were taken by the government?*

sheriff; but they were rather in sentiment with the settlers, and disbanded themselves, on the appearance of an armed opposition. The actions of ejectment still went on in the courts of Albany. No attention was, however, paid to them, nor any defence made by the settlers. But when attempts were made to carry these decisions into effect, a mob was assembled to oppose their execution. As the efforts of the government were continued, the opposition of the settlers became more bold and daring, and was frequently characterised by acts of outrage and violence.

SEC. VI. 1765. Much excitement was produced by the *stamp act*, which was passed by the British parliament, early in the present year, for the purpose of raising a revenue from their American colonies.

This act ordained that all instruments of writing, such as deeds, bonds, notes, &c. among the colonies, should be null and void, unless executed on stamped paper, for which a duty should be paid to the crown.

SEC. VII. In October, a congress, consisting of twenty-eight delegates, from the assemblies of Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina, was held at New York, to consult on the common interest. They made a declaration of the rights and grievances of the colonies; petitioned the king for redress, and presented memorials to both houses of parliament.

SEC. VIII. When the *stamp act* arrived in New York, it was contemptuously cried about

---

*What effect had the efforts of the government?*

VI. What act was passed by the British parliament in 1765?—For what purpose?—What was required by this act?

VII. What congress met at New York?—For what purpose?

the streets, under the title of "The Folly of England, and Ruin of America." Serious disturbances took place, soon after, on the arrival of the stamped papers. Mr Colden, the lieutenant governor, was hanged and burnt in effigy. The merchants formed an association, and resolved to direct their correspondents in Europe to ship no more goods, until the *stamp act* should be repealed.

The stamp papers arrived in New York about the last of October. Mr M'Euers, the stamp distributor, having resigned to avoid the popular odium, the lieutenant governor took them into Fort George, and made great exertions to secure them. On the first of November, the day on which the stamp act was to go into effect, many of the inhabitants, offended at the conduct, and disliking the political sentiments of Mr Colden, having assembled in the evening, proceeded to the fort walls; broke open his stable, and took out his coach; and, after carrying it through the principal streets of the city, marched to the common, where a gallows was erected, on one end of which they suspended his effigy, with a stamped bill of lading in one hand, and a figure of the devil in the other.

When the effigy had hung a considerable time, they carried it in procession, with the gallows entire, the coach preceding, to the gate of the fort, whence it was removed to the bowling green, under the muzzles of the guns, where a bonfire was made, and the whole pageantry, including the coach, was consumed, amidst the acclamations of several thousand spectators. They next proceeded to the house of Major James, who was a friend to the stamp act, and, after plundering it, consumed every article of the furniture in a bonfire.

The next morning a paper was drawn up, and read from the balcony of a coffee house, which was much frequented by the citizens, setting forth the necessity of being peace-

---

VIII. What took place when the stamp act arrived?—On the arrival of the stamps?

*Give some account of these disturbances.*

able, and calling upon the inhabitants to turn out with their arms upon any alarm, and quell all riotous proceedings. To prevent the effect of this proclamation, Capt. Sears, a violent opposer of the stamp act, addressed the populace. He assured them that, the intention of the proposal, that had been read, was to prevent their obtaining possession of the stamped papers; and added, "but we will have them within four and twenty hours." The address was answered by loud shouts of applause.

In the evening, the mob again assembled, and insisted on the governor's delivering the stamps into their hands. Mr Colden attempted to pacify them, by declaring, that he had nothing to do in relation to the stamps, but should leave it to Sir Henry Moore to do as he pleased on his arrival. Not satisfied with this the people made an attempt to obtain the stamps by force. After much negotiation, it was, however, agreed, that they should be delivered to the corporation, which was accordingly done, and they were deposited in the city hall. Ten boxes of stamps arriving, some time after, were committed to the flames.

On the 6th of November, the people again assembled, in the fields, and it was proposed, that a committee be appointed to open a correspondence with the other colonies. This was a measure of so serious and important a nature, as to endanger the property and lives of the committee, especially, should the stamp act be enforced, and for some time no one would venture to accept the appointment. At length Capt. Sears and four others offered themselves, and were approved. They agreed among themselves to sign all the letters with their several names, and open a correspondence with all the colonies. The Philadelphians were requested to forward their enclosed letters to the southern states, and the Bostonians to forward those for New Hampshire.\*

SEC. IX. Sir Henry Moore, who had been appointed to supersede Gen. Monckton in the government of the province, arrived in November; and commenced his administration.

\* *Gordon.*

Owing to the spirited opposition of the colonies, the *stamp act* was repealed in 1766. In the following year, the controversy, concerning the *New Hampshire Grants*, became so serious and alarming, as to require the interposition of the crown. A royal order was given to the governor, directing him to suspend all proceedings relative to these grants, until his majesty's further pleasure be made known. The colony of New York contained, at this time, upwards of one hundred and sixty thousand inhabitants.

SEC. x. 1767. The subject of the taxation was again resumed by the parliament, and the colonies were required to make provision for the support of the British troops in America. New York refused; and an act was passed for restraining the assembly of this colony, until they should comply with the requisition. The colonies generally now began to be seriously alarmed at the oppressive measures pursued by the British government.

SEC. xi. In 1770, Lord Dunmore was appointed, Governor of the province. He was succeeded the following year by Mr Tryon, who, in 1772, made an attempt to conciliate the minds of the settlers of the New Hampshire Grants. Some negotiations took place, but no conciliation was effected, and the con-

---

When was the stamp act repealed? — What is said of the controversy with the Grants? — How many inhabitants did the colony contain at this time?

x. What was required of the colonies in 1767? — How did New-York treat this requisition? — What was the consequence?

xi. Who was appointed Governor in 1770? — Who succeeded him? — What appointments did he make?

troversy continued to rage with increasing animosity.

In 1774, the assembly passed an act, by which it was declared felony punishable by death, for any of the settlers of the New Hampshire Grants to oppose the government by force. The governor at the same time made proclamation, offering a reward of fifty pounds each, for the apprehending, and securing, of Ethan Allen, Seth Warner, and six others of the most obnoxious of the settlers.

The inhabitants of the New Hampshire Grants became still more violent in their opposition, and formed new associations for mutual support. The proscribed persons, in an address to the people of the county of Albany, made this public declaration—"We will kill and destroy any person or persons, whomsoever, who shall presume to be accessory, aiding, or assisting in taking any of us."

SEC. XII. 1775. The coercive measures of the British government were not relinquished. Early in the present year, bills were passed for restraining the trade of New England, and of the middle, and southern colonies, with the exception of New York, Delaware, and North Carolina.

The manifest object of the ministry, in making this discrimination, was to promote disunion among the colonies. The plan, however, proved unsuccessful. The exempted colonies spurned the proffered favor, and submitted to the restraints imposed on their neighbors.

---

What success attended them?—What act was passed in 1774?  
*What measures were taken by the settlers?*

XII. What bills were passed in 1775?—What was the object of the ministry?—How did the plan succeed?

At the time the restraining acts were framing, the assembly of New York were preparing a petition for a redress of grievances. On the receipt of this petition, the British parliament were not a little disappointed to find the very "loyal assembly of New York" stating, "that an exemption from internal taxation, and the exclusive right of providing for their own civil government, and the administration of justice in the colony, were esteemed by them, as their undoubted and unalienable rights."

SEC. XIII. The controversy relative to the New Hampshire Grants continued to rage with unabated violence. In the spring of the present year, an event took place, which served still further to exasperate both parties.

In consequence of the differences existing with the British Government, the courts of justice held under the royal authority, in the adjacent provinces, were either shut up, or adjourned without transacting any business. At the time appointed, for the session of the court at Westminster, in the New Hampshire grants, some of the inhabitants of this, and the adjacent towns, took possession of the court house at an early hour, to prevent the officers of the court from entering.

The judges, on being refused admittance, at the customary hour of opening the court, retired to their quarters. About eleven o'clock at night, the sheriff and other officers attended by an armed force, repaired to the court house; when being again refused admittance, some of the party fired into the house, killed one man, and wounded several.

The people were highly inflamed by this rash proceeding, and, on the following day, assembled in large numbers. A coroner attended, and a jury of inquest brought in a verdict, that the man was murdered by the court party. Some of the officers were seized, and carried to the jail at Northampton in Massachusetts, but were released from confinement, on application to the chief justice of New York.

*What was done by the assembly, while these acts were framing?*

— *What statement did they make in this petition?*

XIII. *What is said of the controversy, concerning the Grants at this time?*

*Give some account of the occurrence at Westminster.*

Committees of a large body of the people soon after met at Westminster, and amongst other measures, passed the following resolve. "That it is the duty of the inhabitants wholly to renounce and resist the administration of the government of New York, until such time, as their lives and property can be secured by it ; or until they can have opportunity to lay their grievances before the king, with a petition to be annexed to some other government, or erected into a new one, as may appear best for the inhabitants."

SEC. XIV. Matters now appeared about to form a most sanguinary crisis. Both parties were in the highest state of resentment, and exasperation ; when an event, the most tremendous in its consequences, arrested the attention of all, and gave a new channel to the torrent of popular fury.

The breaking out of the American war at Lexington, by presenting new scenes, and greater objects, seems to have prevented either party from proceeding to open hostilities, and turned their attention from their particular contest, to the general cause of America. Local and provincial contests were at once swallowed up, by the novelty, the grandeur, and the importance of the contest, which then opened between Britain and America.\*

\* *Williams.*

---

*What measures were taken by the settlers ?*

*What resolutions were passed at Westminster ?*

xiv. What is said of the controversy at this time ? — What prevented their proceeding to open hostilities ?

## CHAP. XI.

## COMMENCEMENT OF THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

*Origin of the controversy with Great Britain. State of affairs in the colony. Convention appoint delegates to the Provincial Congress. War breaks out at Lexington. Disturbances in New York. Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. Gov. Tryon arrives. Expedition against Canada. Surrender of Cham-bly, St Johns and Montreal. Montgomery ap-pears before Quebec. His death. Inhabit-ants of Tryon county disarmed. Provincial troops enter New York. Americans evacuate Canada. Declaration of Independence.*

SEC. I. The dissents between the colonies and their mother country commenced soon af-ter the peace of 1763; and originated in the right claimed by the king and parliament to tax the colonies, and to make laws binding them in all cases. The colonies contended, that *tax-ation* and *representation* were inseparable; and that, as they had no representation in the Brit-ish parliament, such right could not exist.

Previous to the peace of '63, the colonies had been per-mitted to tax themselves without the interference of par-

1. When did the dissensions between Great Britain and the colonies commence?—In what did they originate?—What was contend-ed by the colonies?

*How had the colonies been taxed previous to 1763?*

liament. The first act for the avowed purpose of raising a revenue from the colonies, was passed by the British parliament in 1764, laying a duty on sundry articles of American consumption. Of this act, the colonies highly disapproved, because it recognised a right to tax them without their consent. In pursuance of the same policy, the celebrated *stamp act* was passed the following year, and excited general indignation throughout the colonies.

SEC. II. The controversy, thus introduced, had been continued for ten years, increasing in animosity; and had gathered strength and maturity from various circumstances of aggression and violence. The state of affairs during this period presents a series of coercive and oppressive measures on the one hand, and of uniform and unshaken resistance on the other.

The Americans had no desire for a separation from England, and neither party appears to have anticipated a civil war. Both parties were resolutely determined not to abandon the ground they had assumed; and were indulging the hope, that they should ultimately find means to bring their opponents to submission. Matters were however obviously tending towards that point, at which, all hope of reconciliation must be banished for ever.

SEC. III. 1775. The second continental congress was to be assembled the present year at Philadelphia in May. The subject of sending delegates to this congress was agitated in the assembly of New York; and, on the refusal of that body to appoint them, a provincial con-

---

*When was the first act passed by the British parliament for this purpose?—Why was it disapproved?—What other act is mentioned?*

II. What is said of the progress of the controversy?—Of the state of affairs during this period?—Did the Americans desire a separation from England?—What hope was indulged by both parties?

III. What congress in 1775?—What was agitated in the New York Assembly?

vention was called by the people for this purpose. The convention assembled at the city of New York on the 22d of April, and proceeded to make the appointments.

This convention was composed of deputies from New York, Albany, Dutchess, Ulster, Orange, Westchester, King's and Suffolk counties. They appointed Philip Livingston, George Clinton, James Duane, John Alsop, Simon Boerum, William Floyd, John Jay, Henry Wisner, Philip Schuyler, Lewis Morris, Francis Lewis, and Robert R. Livingston, jr. delegates to the continental congress, who, or any five of them, were entrusted with full power to concert with the delegates from the other colonies, and determine upon such measures, as should be judged most effectual for the preservation and re-establishment of American rights and privileges, and for the restoration of harmony between Great Britain and the colonies.

The event which occurred on the 5th of March, will convey a tolerable idea of the state of feeling at that time in the city of New York. "The whig citizens, whose hearts were set upon having delegates for the new continental congress, upon the assembly's declining to appoint them, contrived to collect their fellow citizens together in order to obtain their opinion."

"When assembled in a body, there was a confused cry of 'Congress, or no Congress?' After much altercation, the tories had recourse to compulsive reasoning, and began to deal about their blows. The whigs were in the worst situation, not being provided with similar arguments, till two of their number repaired to an adjacent cooper's yard, from whence they drew forth to their friends, a number of hoop sticks, which they reduced to a proper length, and forwarded to the combatants. The whigs soon carried the day, by club law, and beat their opponents off the ground."\*

\* *Gordon.* The terms whig and tory were applied to those in favor of and opposed to the continental congress; and were afterwards used, as synonymous with republican and royalist.

---

By whom were they appointed?

*Who were appointed delegates?—With what powers were they entrusted?—Give some account of the event on the 5th of March.*

SEC. IV. The massacre of the provincial militia by the British troops, at Lexington in Massachusetts, on the 19th of April, opened the scene, and introduced the war of the revolution. The intelligence of this event excited a general burst of indignation throughout the continent.

The people of New York were much divided in their opinions with regard to the measures to be pursued. Many were still disposed to continue the exertions for effecting a reconciliation of the controversy with Great Britain. To most, it was, however, obvious, that the period of reconciliation was now past, and that the only safety for the colonies was to be found in vigorous and effectual defence against the arms and attacks of their mother country.

SEC V. The disturbances in the city of New York, May the 5th, assumed so menacing an aspect as to require extraordinary means for securing the public tranquillity. A committee of one hundred of the citizens was appointed for this purpose. This body presented a spirited address to the authorities of the city of London, stating their determination, never to submit to the oppressive measures of the British government.

In this address, they declared, that "The disposal of

---

iv. What event took place at Lexington on the 19th of April?—What effect did this event produce upon the colonies?—What is said of the sentiments of the people of New York at this time?

v. What is said of disturbances in the city?—What committee was appointed?—To whom did they present an address?—What statement did they make?

*Give some further account of this address.*

their own property with perfect spontaneity, and in a manner wholly divested of every appearance of constraint, is their indispensable birthright. This exalted blessing they are resolutely determined to defend with their blood, and to transfer, uncontaminated, to their posterity." They professed their readiness to submit cheerfully to a regulation of commerce, by the legislature of the parent country, excluding in its nature every idea of taxation.

They gave assurance, "That America was grown so irritable by oppression, that the least shock in any part was, by the most powerful and sympathetic affection, instantaneously felt through the whole continent. That while the whole continent were ardently wishing for peace on such terms, as could be acceded to by Englishmen, they were indefatigable in preparing for the last appeal." Near the close they observe—"We speak the real sentiments of the confederated colonies on the continent, from Nova Scotia to Georgia, when we declare, that all the horrors of a civil war will never compel America to submit to taxation by authority of parliament."

An association was the next day signed by above a thousand of the principal inhabitants of the city and country. They in the most solemn manner declared, that they associated to endeavor carrying into execution whatever measures might be recommended by the continental congress, or be resolved upon by their own provincial convention, for the purpose of preserving their constitution, and opposing the execution of the oppressive acts of the British parliament, until a reconciliation between Great Britain and America, on constitutional principles, could be obtained; and they would in all things follow the advice of their general committee, respecting the purposes aforesaid, the preservation of peace and good order, and the safety of individuals and private property.\*

SEC. vi. It was deemed of importance, for putting the country in a posture of defence, to secure the fortresses at Ticonderoga, and

\* *Gordon.*

*What association was the next day formed?—What did they declare?*

VI. *What military operations in May?*

Crown Point. Col. Ethan Allen, with a party of "Green Mountain Boys,"\* on the morning of the tenth of May, took possession of Ticonderoga by surprise. On the same day, Crown Point was surrendered to another party under Col. Warner. A third party surprised *Skeensborough*, (at present *Whitehall*,) and secured that important harbor. The capture of an armed sloop at St Johns, soon after, gave to the Americans the entire command of Lake Champlain.

When Allen arrived at Ticonderoga, he demanded the surrender of the fort. "By what authority do you require it," said De la Place, the commander. "I demand it," said Allen, "in the name of the great Jehovah, and the Continental Congress." The fort was in no situation for defence, and was immediately surrendered. By these enterprises above two hundred pieces of cannon, and large quantities of ammunition and military stores fell into the hands of the Americans.

SEC. VII. Gov. Tryon, who had been some time absent on a visit to Europe, arrived at New York on the 24th of June. He was much esteemed by a large portion of the citizens, and received a complimentary address from the city authorities. His exertions to promote the royal cause soon rendered him extremely unpopular. In October, he became alarmed for his personal safety, and retired on board the *Halifax* packet.

The few troops, that were stationed at New York, had been withdrawn some time previous to the arrival of Gov. Tryon. On the same

\* *Troops from the New Hampshire Grants, so called.*

*Give some account of the seizure of Ticonderoga.*

Q. VII. What is said of the return of Gov. Tryon? — What rendered him unpopular? — Why did he leave the city?

day, on which the address was presented to him, all the king's stores, of various kinds, at Turtle Bay, were seized, and removed.

SEC. VIII. A regular system of military opposition having been resolved upon by the Continental Congress, George Washington, of Virginia, was appointed commander in chief of the American army. Amongst other appointments, Philip Schuyler, of New York, was appointed major general, and Richard Montgomery, brigadier general.

While Washington was engaged in organising the main body of the army in Massachusetts, an important expedition was planned against Canada, the command of which was assigned to generals Schuyler, and Montgomery.

For this expedition, it was proposed to raise two thousand men, two regiments of which were to be raised in New York, and the remainder from the New England colonies. An armament was fitted out at Ticonderoga, and Crown Point, and, on September the fourth, Montgomery, with the forces that had arrived, moved down the lake. He was joined by Schuyler at Isle la Motte, when they both moved on to Isle aux Noix, and took measures to prevent the British vessels entering the lake.

On the sixth of September, the American army, consisting of about one thousand men, advanced towards St Johns; but finding the fort completely fortified and garrisoned, they resolved to return to Isle aux Noix, and await the arrival of artillery and reinforcements. Gen. Schuyler returned to Albany, to conclude a treaty with the Indians.

SEC. IX. The reinforcements having arrived,

---

What took place on the day the address was presented?

VIII. What was resolved upon by Congress?—Who was appointed commander in chief?—What appointments are mentioned in New York?—What expedition was planned?

Give some account of the operations?

Montgomery proceeded to St Johns, on the 17th of September, and began the siege. The fort at Chambly, situated farther down the river Sorel, was soon after invested by majors Brown and Livingston, assisted by the Canadians, who had joined the American forces, and compelled to surrender. Having obtained from this capture a large supply of military stores, the siege of St Johns was pressed with great vigor. After an obstinate resistance, this fortress, with about seven hundred prisoners of war, was surrendered to Montgomery, on the third of November.

Montreal was soon after surrendered without opposition. From this place, Montgomery rapidly advanced towards Quebec.

During the siege of St Johns, Gen. Carlton, with a force of eight hundred men, chiefly from Montreal, made an effort to relieve the place. While they were attempting to cross the St Lawrence, Col. Warner, who, with a body of three hundred men, was watching their movements, commenced a most spirited attack, and compelled them to retire in confusion. Upon the fall of St Johns, Carlton retired to Quebec.

In the mean time, a body of troops from Massachusetts, under the command of Col. Arnold, had been detached by Gen. Washington to cooperate against Quebec. Arnold, with seven hundred men, arrived at Point Levi, November 9th, and on the 19th, encamped at Point au Trembles, to await the arrival of Montgomery.

---

ix. When was the siege of St Johns commenced?—What enterprise was soon after effected?—What is said of the surrender of St Johns?—What place surrendered soon after?—To what did Montgomery next direct his attention?

*What attempt of Gen. Carlton during the siege of St Johns?—What is said of a body of troops from Massachusetts?*

SEC. X. Montgomery, with the New York troops, effected a junction with Arnold on the first of December, and on the fifth, with their united forces, appeared before Quebec. On the 31st, the Americans made an attempt to carry the city by storm. They were, however, repulsed, with the loss of Montgomery, their brave commander, and near half their troops. After this repulse, Arnold, with the remains of the army, retired about three miles from Quebec, where he encamped for the winter.

"The garrison of Quebec consisted, at the time of the above attack, of about one thousand five hundred men; the American forces were about eight hundred. The loss of the Americans, in killed and wounded, was about one hundred, and three hundred were taken prisoners.

"The death of Gen. Montgomery was deeply lamented, both in Europe and America. The most powerful speakers in the British parliament displayed their eloquence in praising his virtues, and lamenting his fall. Congress directed a monument to be erected to his memory, expressive of their sense of his high patriotism and heroic conduct."\*

SEC. XI. 1776. Congress received information, that a large number of the inhabitants of Tryon county were disaffected to the American cause, and under the direction of Sir John Johnson, were making military preparations. It was resolved to disarm them, and the busi-

\* Goodrich.

---

x. Give some account of the progress of Montgomery.—When did he attempt to storm the city?—What success attended his attempt?

*What can you say of the garrison of Quebec?—Of the American forces?—Of their loss?—Of the death of Montgomery?*

xi. Of what did congress receive information in 1776?—What measures were taken?

ness was accordingly committed to general Schuyler.

Gen. Schuyler, about the middle of January, called out seven hundred of the Albany county militia, and commenced his march ; but such was the enthusiasm of the people, that on his arrival at Caghnewaga, his force amounted to near three thousand, including nine hundred of the Tryon county militia. The approach of so formidable a force, intimidated the royalists to such a degree, that they were ready to make proposals of submission.

It was agreed, that Sir John, having given his parole of honor not to take up arms against America, should confine himself to certain limits ;—that he should deliver up all the cannon, arms, and military stores, that, to his knowledge, were in the county, a few favorite family arms excepted ;—that the inhabitants should surrender their arms, and twelve prisoners, who were to be selected by Gen. Schuyler, and to be treated with humanity and due deference to rank. The whole number disarmed was supposed to amount to about six hundred.

About the same time, a considerable number were intrenching themselves on Long Island, for the purpose of supporting the royal cause. A detachment of the Jersey militia were sent over, by whom they were disarmed, and their leaders secured.

SEC. XII. Gen. Lee, preceded by a detachment of the continental troops, entered New York, early in February. In March, Gen. Washington succeeded in expelling the British troops from Boston, and, anticipating an attempt upon New York, soon after, made this place the head quarters of the army.

---

*Give some account of Schuyler's proceedings.*

At what other place were efforts made to support the royal cause?

—What was done to counteract them?

XII. When was New York occupied by the continental troops?—What was effected by Washington in March?

About the time of Lee's arrival, the inhabitants were thrown into great consternation, by the appearance of Gen. Clinton, with an armed force, at the Hook. Gen. Lee gave out—"If the men of war set one house on fire in consequence of my coming, I will chain an hundred of their friends together, and make that house their funeral pile." Had anything been attempted, he would probably have retaliated in a formidable manner; but Clinton, after tarrying a short time at the Hook, sailed to the southward.

SEC. XIII. The siege of Quebec was regularly maintained during the winter, and considerable reinforcements were ordered to that post. Gen. Thomas was appointed to take the command, and arrived on the first of May. The American force before Quebec amounted to one thousand nine hundred men; but the small pox having broken out among the troops, not more than nine hundred were fit for duty. As it was impossible, in the present state of the army, to effect any enterprise, it was resolved, May the fifth, to make the best retreat in their power.

The arrival of reinforcements gave the British a decided superiority, and the American army, in a series of unfortunate movements, were compelled to abandon one post after another, until, on the 17th of June, they wholly evacuated Canada.

Gen. Thomas died of the small pox at Sorelle, and the command devolved on Gen. Sullivan. By the assistance of Stark, Poor, Wayne, and other excellent officers, he succeeded in making a safe retreat before a far superior

---

*Give some account of the occurrence about the time of Lee's arrival.*

XIII. What is said of the siege of Quebec?—Of the number and condition of the troops?—What was resolved upon?—What further can you say of the operations in Canada?

*What is said of the retreat?*

British force, and bringing the shattered remains of the American army safe to Crown Point.

SEC. xiv. In the midst of these misfortunes the Americans were not dispirited. On the 8th of June, a motion was made in the continental congress, then in session at Philadelphia, for a declaration of independence. After mature deliberation, they, on the *4th of July*, 1776, in the name, and by the authority of the people of the united colonies, solemnly published, and declared—

“That the united colonies are, and of right ought to be, *Free and Independent States*; and that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connexion between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved.”

The intelligence of this declaration was received on the 9th by the convention of the state of New York, then in session at White Plains. They immediately passed an unanimous resolution, fully approving of the measure, and expressing their determination, at the risk of their lives and fortunes, to unite with the other colonies in supporting it.

The declaration was signed by all the members of the Continental Congress. The delegates from New York were *William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, and Lewis Morris*.

When the declaration arrived at New York, it was read, in accordance with general orders, at the head of each

---

xiv. What declaration was made in 1776?—What resolution was passed by the New York convention?

*By whom was the declaration signed?—Who were the delegates from New York?—What took place when the declaration arrived at New York?*

brigade of the continental army ; and was everywhere received with the utmost demonstrations of joy. The same evening, the equestrian statue of the king was laid prostrate, and the lead of which it was composed doomed to be cast into bullets, for the use of the army.



## CHAP. XII.

### THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

FROM 1776 TO 1778.

*Disposition of British and American troops at New York. Battle on Long Island. Americans evacuate New York. Americans continue to retreat. Fort Washington taken by the British. Operations on Lake Champlain. Convention adopt the State Constitution. Commencement of the northern campaign in 1777. Invasion of Burgoyne. His capture. Enterprise of Clinton. State Government organised.*

SEC. I. 1776. It was now expected, that the enemy would make New York the principal point of attack, and great exertions were made for putting the place in a posture of defence. Gen. Washington arrived on the 14th of April. The command of the British force was entrusted to Lord Howe and his brother Sir William. On the 22d of August, Lord Howe landed his troops, estimated at twentyfour thousand men, at

---

I. Where was an attack expected in 1776?—What measures were taken?—What was the number of the enemy, and by whom were they commanded?

Gravesend Bay, on Long Island. The American army, amounting to fifteen thousand, under the command of Gen. Sullivan, were encamped on a peninsula near the village of Brooklyn.

The centre of the British army, composed of Hessians, under Gen. Heister, encamped at Flatbush. The left wing, under Gen. Grant, extended to the coast. The right wing, composed of the principal army, under the command of generals Clinton, Percy, and Cornwallis, was extended towards the opposite coast at Flatland.

The Americans had thrown up strong fortifications, which were separated from New York by East river. A line of intrenchments from Mill Creek to the elbow of East river enclosed the American camp. The armies were separated by a range of hills, covered with thick wood, which intersect the country from west to east, terminating near Jamaica. These high lands were occupied by large detachments from the American army.

SEC. II. On the 27th of August, the British made an attack on the advanced posts of the American army. After an obstinate engagement, the Americans were compelled to retire, with great loss, to their intrenchments. They now resolved to withdraw from the island, and, on the 30th, a safe retreat was effected.

The loss of the Americans in the battle on Long Island, in killed, wounded, and taken prisoners, was upwards of one thousand. Among the prisoners captured by the enemy, were generals Sullivan, Stirling, and Woodhull. The loss of the British was estimated at about four hundred.

---

Where did they land?—What was the number of the Americans, and by whom were they commanded?—Where were they encamped?

*Give some account of the disposition of the British army.—Of the American army.*

II. When and by whom was an attack made?—What was the result of the action?—When did the Americans withdraw from the island?

*What can you say of the loss of the Americans in this engagement?—Of the British?*

The successful retreat from Long Island was attended by favorable auspices, and conducted with the most consummate address. After the necessary preparations, on the 29th of August, at eight in the evening, the troops silently began to move, and, at eleven, were on board their vessels. A violent northeast wind, and ebb tide, at first prevented their passage. Fortunately, the wind suddenly veered to the northwest, when they immediately made sail, and landed in New York. About two o'clock in the morning, a thick fog, at this season of the year uncommon, covered Long Island, the New York side remaining perfectly clear. It was not till some time after sunrise, that the fog was dispelled, and the English perceived, that the Americans had abandoned their camp, and were sheltered from pursuit.

SEC. III. Immediately after their victory on Long Island, the enemy made dispositions to attack New York. It was thought prudent to evacuate the city, and the American troops retired to Haerlem and King's Bridge. The British took possession of the place on the 15th of September, and encamped the main body of their army on York Island, near the American lines.

The day following the retreat from New York, a considerable body of the enemy appearing in the plains between the two camps, Gen. Washington ordered Col. Knowlton, with a corps of rangers, and Maj. Leitch, with three companies of a Virginian regiment, to get in their rear, while he amused them by making apparent dispositions to attack their front. The plan succeeded, and a skirmish ensued, in which the Americans charged the enemy with great intrepidity, and gained considerable advantages. This action exerted a happy influence in reviving the depressed spirits of the army.

---

*What can you say of the retreat?*

III. What dispositions were next made by the enemy?—What measures were taken by the Americans?

*Give some account of the operations the day after the retreat from New York.*

A few days after the British took possession of New York, a very destructive fire broke out in the city, nearly one fourth part of which was laid in ashes. About one thousand houses were consumed.\*

SEC. IV. The American army being, in point of numbers, greatly inferior to that of the enemy, it was resolved, in council of war, to adopt the course of evacuating and retreating. Gen. Washington, accordingly, drew off the main body of the army from York Island, and encamped at White Plains. Lord Howe advanced upon him with fifteen thousand effective men, and an engagement ensued on the 23th of October. The loss on each side amounted to several hundreds, but no decisive advantage was obtained.

On the 30th, the British army, having received considerable reinforcements, again made dispositions to attack the American lines; but a violent rain setting in induced a postponement of the assault. The Americans soon after withdrew in the night to the heights of North Castle, about five miles from White Plains; there, their position was so strong, that the enemy declined any attempt. Gen. Washington, leaving about seven thousand five hundred men under Gen. Lee, for the defence of North Castle, then crossed the Hudson, and continued his retreat to the southward.

SEC. V. The American army continued retiring from New York, and Sir William Howe embraced the opportunity of reducing Fort Washington, on the Hudson.

\* *Holmes's Annals.*

*What occurred after the British took possession?*

iv. What course was next adopted by the Americans?—Give some account of the action at White Plains.

*What prevented the enemy from making another attack?*—

*What measures were taken by Washington?*

v. What enterprise of the enemy while the Americans were retiring?

The fort was invested by the English forces on the 16th of November. After a severe contest, which continued nearly the whole day, Col. Magaw, the commander, finding his ammunition mostly exhausted, surrendered the fortress, and with it, about two thousand seven hundred men, as prisoners of war. Fort Lee, on the Jersey shore, was soon after abandoned to the enemy.

SEC. vi. While these operations were going on in the southern part of the State, the northern division of the army, under General Gates, was engaged in repairing the fortress at Ticonderoga, and making preparations for securing the command of Lake Champlain. The works of Ticonderoga were considerably enlarged, and, by the eighteenth of August, a considerable naval force was equipped and fitted for action.

This armament consisted of one sloop, three schooners, and five gondolas, carrying fifty-five guns, besides seventy swivels, and was manned with about four hundred men. The British in the mean time, at the north end of the lake, were engaged in fitting out a superior naval force, which was completed early in October. In the number of vessels, guns, and implements of war, and in the number of men, the strength of the British was double to that of the American fleet.

SEC. vii. The American fleet under Gen. Arnold, the last of August, sailed down the lake, and took a position between Isle Valcour and the western main. Gen. Carlton, with the British, proceeded up the lake and made an attack on the eleventh of October. An en-

---

*Give some account of it.*

vi. In what was the northern division of the army engaged?—  
What measures were taken?

*Give some account of this armament.—Of that of the British.*

vii. Give some account of the operations on Lake Champlain.

gagement ensued, which was obstinately maintained for several hours, when, the wind being unfavorable for the British, they withdrew their vessels from the action. Arnold, convinced of the superior strength of the enemy, endeavored, during the night, to effect a retreat. He was pursued on the following morning, and on the 13th a second engagement took place, near Crown Point, in which the British were completely victorious. Arnold landed his men, and after blowing up his vessels, and firing the fortress at Crown Point, retreated to Ticonderoga.

SEC. VIII. Gen. Gates had now put the works at Ticonderoga in a state of defence, and, with twelve thousand effective men, awaited an attack from the enemy. Gen. Carlton, after reconnoitering the place, and not deeming it prudent to make the attack, remained some time at Crown Point, and on the approach of winter returned to Canada.

Gen. Washington, after having crossed the Hudson, continued his retreat through New Jersey, and crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania. The unfortunate operations of the war in this quarter, spread a deep and general gloom over the American cause. The continental congress were however not discouraged by these misfortunes, and proceeded to draw up *articles of confederation*, and perpetual union between the States.

On the night of the 25th of December, Gen. Washington recrossed the Delaware, and advanced to Trenton,

---

— Of the second engagement.

VIII. What is said of the operations at Ticonderoga?

*What is said of the movements of Washington after crossing the Hudson?* — *Of the proceedings of Congress?* — *What enterprise of Washington in December?*

where, on the following day, he surprised and made prisoners of one thousand Hessians, who were in the service of the enemy. After securing these prisoners on the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware, he proceeded to Princeton, and attacked a detachment of the British, who had taken refuge in the college. Sixty of the enemy were killed and three hundred taken prisoners.

SEC. IX. 1777. The people of New York from the commencement of the war, and the consequent abolition of the regal authority, had been governed by the ordinances of the State Convention and the directions of the Council of Safety. Early the present year they directed their attention to the more perfect organization of their internal police, and the establishment of civil government.

A Convention of Delegates, elected and authorized for this purpose, assembled at Kingston, on the 20th of April, and adopted the state constitution. George Clinton, Esq. was soon after elected by the freeholders to the office of governor.

The character of the constitution adopted by this convention was republican, and while it formed the original compact between the people and their rulers, it served as a declaration and bill of rights. By this constitution the supreme executive power was vested in a Governor, and Lieutenant Governor, who was to preside over the Senate, and perform the duties of the supreme executive in case of any vacancy. The supreme legislative power was vested in the Senate and House of Assembly, who were

---

ix. How had the people of New York been governed since the commencement of the war?—To what did they direct their attention in 1777?—Where, and by whom was the constitution adopted?—Who was appointed first governor?

*What was the character of this constitution?—In whom was the supreme executive power vested?—The supreme legislative power?*

to hold at least one session every year. The governor and members of the senate and house of assembly were to be elected by the *freeholders* of the State of New York.

The Council of Safety were directed by the Convention to regulate the manner in which the first elections should be held, and were invested with all the powers necessary for the safety and preservation of the state, until a meeting of the Legislature. The time appointed by the Convention for the first meeting of this body was the first of July; but on account of the embarrassment occasioned by the warlike operations in the country, the time for this meeting was postponed by several successive prorogations to the first of September.

SEC. X. A principal object of the British, in the campaign of the present year, was to open a communication between New York and Canada, and separate New England from the neighboring States.

The plan of operations consisted of two parts. Gen. Burgoyne, with the main body of the army from Canada, was to advance by way of Lake Champlain, and effect a junction, at Albany, with the royal army from New York. A detachment of British soldiers, and a large body of Indians under Col. St Leger, with a regiment of New York loyalists under Sir John Johnson, were to ascend the St Lawrence to Lake Ontario, and penetrate toward Albany by the way of the Mohawk river.

SEC. XI. Early in the spring of the present

---

*By whom were the governor and members of the legislature to be elected?—What directions were given to the Council of Safety?—With what powers were they vested?—Why was the meeting of the legislature postponed?*

X. What was a principal object of the British in the campaign of 1777?—What was the plan of operations?

year, several enterprises were undertaken by the royal army in New York for the destruction of American stores.

A detachment of about five hundred landed at Peekskill, March 23d; but on the approach of an American force, fired the principal store houses, and retired. Another detachment, of two thousand, under Gen. Tryon, proceeded, April 26th, to Danbury, in Connecticut, and after destroying eighteen houses, with large stores of provisions, were attacked by the Americans, and retired with considerable loss.

In retaliation for these predatory excursions, an enterprise was soon after undertaken by the Americans against Long Island. Sagg Harbor was, May 23d, completely surprised, and twelve vessels, with forage for the use of the army, were destroyed. About one hundred of the enemy were killed and taken prisoners, without the loss of a single man by the Americans.

SEC. XII. On the 30th of June, Gen. Burgoyne, with an army of above seven thousand men, exclusive of a corps of artillery, and a large body of Indians, advanced to Crown Point, and proceeded to invest Ticonderoga. Gen. St Clair, the American commander, abandoned the fortress on the 6th of July, and after a laborious and distressing march, effected a junction with Gen. Schuyler at Fort Edward.

The rear guard of the American army, under Col. Warner, consisting of above one thousand men, was overtaken and attacked at Hubbardton by a body of the enemy amounting to eight hundred and fifty, under Gen. Frazer.

---

XI. What enterprises were undertaken in the spring?

*What is said of the one against Peekskill?—Against Danbury?—What was undertaken in retaliation?*

XII. What can you say of the operations at Ticonderoga?—Of the action at Hubbardton?

The Americans made an obstinate resistance, until a reinforcement of the enemy arrived, when they were completely routed, with the loss of about four hundred men killed and taken prisoners.

The forces of Gen. Schuyler at Fort Edward, after the junction of St Clair, did not amount to over four thousand four hundred men. Considering the superior force of the enemy, it was resolved to evacuate this post; and, accordingly, on the approach of Burgoyne, Schuyler retired over the Hudson to Saratoga.

SEC. XIII. Gen. Burgoyne arrived at Fort Edward on the 30th of July. On the 3d of August, St Leger with about eighteen hundred men invested *Fort Schuyler*,\* under the command of Gen. Gransevoort. On the approach of the royal forces, Gen. Herkimer assembled the militia for the relief of the garrison, but fell into an ambuscade, and was defeated with great slaughter.

SEC. XIV. While the British army were encamped at Fort Edward, a detachment, under Col. Baum made an attempt to surprise the American stores collected at Bennington, on the New Hampshire Grants. Gen. Stark collected the militia, and on the 26th of August, an obstinate engagement took place, in which the British were totally defeated. Their commander was mortally wounded, and about six hundred men were killed and taken prisoners.

\* Formerly *Fort Stanwix*, at the head of the Mohawk river.

---

*What is said of Schuyler's forces at Fort Edward?—What was resolved?*

XIII. When did Burgoyne arrive at Fort Edward?—Give some account of the operations at Fort Schuyler.

XV. What occurred at Bennington?

St Leger soon after abandoned the siege of Fort Schuyler, and returned to Montreal. Gen. Burgoyne crossed the Hudson on the fourteenth of September, and encamped on the heights and plains of Saratoga. Gen. Gates, who had recently taken the command of the northern army, advanced towards the enemy, and encamped three miles above Stillwater. On the night of the 17th, Burgoyne encamped within four miles of the American army.

SEC. xv. On the 19th of September, Gen. Burgoyne advanced upon the Americans, and a severe but indecisive engagement ensued. The contest was resolutely maintained for four hours, when, on the approach of night, the Americans withdrew from the field. The loss of the Americans was about three hundred; that of the enemy about six hundred.

A second engagement took place on the 7th of October. The Americans conducted with great bravery, and obtained a decided victory. The battle was obstinately contested till night put an end to the effusion of blood. The British lost in killed and taken prisoners about *four\* hundred* men, amongst whom, were several of their most valuable officers. The loss of the Americans was very inconsiderable.

From the 20th of September to the 7th of October, the two armies continued so near each other, that not a night passed without some skirmishing, and several concerted attacks were made upon the British piquets. The royal army now began to suffer severely from the want of provisions, and Burgoyne resolved, if possible, to dislodge the

\* This is merely an estimate of the number. The statements as to the numbers killed in this engagement are much at variance.

---

*What were the proceedings of St Leger?—Of Burgoyne?—Of Gen. Gates?*

xv. What can you say of the action on the 19th of September?—On the 7th of October?

Americans from their posts on the left, and thus open a retreat to the lakes. For this purpose, on the 7th, fifteen hundred men were drawn out, headed by himself, and assisted by generals Phillips, Reidesel, and Frazer. The detachment had scarcely formed, when a furious attack was made on the left, which was sustained by Maj. Ackland, at the head of the British grenadiers, with great firmness. The Americans soon extended their attack along the whole front of the German troops, who were posted on the right of the grenadiers ; and marched a body round their flank, to prevent their retreat. On this movement, the British light infantry, with a part of the 24th regiment, instantly formed, to cover the retreat of the troops into the camp. Their left wing, in the mean time, overpowered with numbers, was obliged to retreat, and would inevitably have been cut to pieces, but for the intervention of the same troops which had just been covering the retreat of the right.

The whole detachment was now under the necessity of retiring : but scarcely had the British troops entered the lines, when the Americans, led by Gen. Arnold, pressing forward under a tremendous fire of grape shot and musketry, assaulted the works throughout their whole extent from right to left. Towards the close of the day, Arnold, with a few men, forced the entrenchments, and actually entered the works ; but his horse being killed, and himself badly wounded in the leg, they were forced to retire. On the left of Arnold's detachment, a regiment, under Lieut. Col. Brooks, was still more successful. It turned to the right, and carried, by storm, the works occupied by the German reserve. Lieut. Col. Breyman was killed, and Brooks maintained the ground he had gained. Among the slain of the enemy, was Gen. Frazer, an officer of distinguished merit, whose loss was particularly regretted.

The force under Gen. Gates was greatly augmented by the militia and volunteers, who were constantly pouring in from all quarters, and their commander vigilant in cutting off from the enemy every avenue of retreat. Fourteen

---

*Give some further account of the action on the 7th of October.---By whom was the force of Gates augmented?---In what was he vigilant?*

hundred men were posted opposite the ford of Saratoga; two thousand in the rear, to prevent a retreat to Fort Edward; and fifteen hundred at a ford higher up. Burgoyne, apprehensive of being hemmed in, retired to Saratoga. The Americans, in the mean time, possessed themselves of Fort Edward, and a detachment of five hundred, under Col. Brown, surprised all the outposts of the enemy, from the north end of Lake George to the body of the fortress at Ticonderoga.

SEC. xvi. After several ineffectual attempts to retreat, Gen. Burgoyne found himself completely surrounded, without a possibility of escaping. In this extremity, he entered into a convention with Gen. Gates, and, on the 17th of October, the royal army, amounting to above five thousand seven hundred men, were surrendered prisoners of war. Soon after the surrender of Burgoyne, the garrison at Ticonderoga abandoned the fortress, and returned to Canada.

The capture of an entire army was justly viewed as an event that must essentially affect the contest between Britain and America; and was received by the people with the highest demonstrations of joy. The intelligence of this event, probably, gave a favorable issue to the negotiations then carried on with the French court, and which resulted, the following year, in obtaining from that government powerful aid, in the prosecution of the war.

SEC. xvii. During the operations at Saratoga, Sir Henry Clinton, with three thousand men,

---

*What disposition did he make of his troops?*

*Of what fortress did the Americans possess themselves? — What was affected by the detachment under Col. Brown?*

xvi. *What is said of the condition of Burgoyne? — When did he surrender?*

*How was the capture of Burgoyne's army viewed? — What influence did this event have on the negotiations with the French?*

convoied by several ships of war, proceeded up the Hudson, with the view of effecting a diversion in favor of Burgoyne. On the 6th of October he made an attack upon Forts Montgomery and Clinton. The attack was obstinately resisted during the day; but on the following evening, the works were carried at the point of the bayonet. Most of the garrison escaped.

Forts Independence, and Constitution, were the next day evacuated, and Gen. Putnam, who had the command on the Hudson, retreated to Fishkill. Gen. Tryon, the day following, burned Continental Village, where considerable stores were deposited. Gen. Vaughan, with a strong detachment, proceeding up the river, devastated the settlements along its banks, burned the village of Kingston, and then embarked for New York.

Misfortune still continued to attend the operations of the southern department of the army. The Americans were defeated at Brandywine, on the 11th of September, and Philadelphia fell into the hands of the British. On the 4th of October, Washington attacked a body of the British troops at Germantown, but was repulsed with a loss of double that of the enemy.

SEC. XVIII. On the 9th of September, the first legislature under the new constitution, assembled at Kingston, and proceeded to organize the government. After making some arrangements for the defence of the country, and

---

xvii. What was attempted, during these operations, by Sir Henry Clinton?—Give some account of the enterprise.

*What is said of the operations of the southern department?*

xviii. When and at what place was the government organized?—What is said of the proceedings of the legislature?

appointing delegates to the General Congress, they adjourned on the 7th of October, having received intelligence of the approach of the enemy.

The members present, at the opening of the first session of the senate, at Kingston, were Pierre Van Cortlandt, John Morris Scott, Philip Livingston, Abraham Yates, Jr., William Floyd, William Smith, Alexander Webster, Dirick W. Ten Broeck, Levi Pawling, Jesse Woodhull, Zephaniah Platt, Jonathan Loudon, and Arthur Parks. Pierre Van Cortlandt, Esq. was elected President. The delegates appointed to the General Congress, were Philip Livingston, James Duane, Francis Lewis, William Duer, and Gouverneur Morris.

The time appointed for this session to commence was the first of September; but on account of the disturbances occasioned by the military operations in the country, a number sufficient to transact business did not assemble until the ninth. During their deliberations, members were frequently called off to assist the military in defending the country, or attend to removing their families from the scene of action.

---

On what account did they adjourn?

*Mention some of the members present at the opening of the first session.—Who were appointed delegates to the General Congress?—What prevented the session from opening at the time appointed?—For what were the members called off?*

## CHAP. XIII.

## REVOLUTIONARY WAR, CONTINUED TO ITS TERMINATION.

*Legislative proceedings. Revival of Controversy relative to the Grants. Treaty of Alliance with France. British Army concentrated at New York. French fleet arrives. Campaign of '79. Operations at Stoney Point and Verplank's. Expedition against the Indians. Campaign of 1780. Depredations of the Royal Army. Arnold's Treachery. Campaign of '81. Capture of Cornwallis. Independence acknowledged.*

SEC. I. 1778. The legislature was again assembled,\* by proclamation of the governor on the 15th of January, and the "articles of confederation and perpetual union between the United States of America," which had been drawn up by Congress the preceding year, presented for their consideration. An act was passed, by which these articles were unanimously approved, and the delegates from the state of New York authorized to ratify the same. They then proceeded to make provision for the better organization of the militia for the defence of the country, and to enact such laws, as the general or local interests of the community were supposed to require.

\* *At Poughkeepsie.*

1. When, and in what manner was the legislature assembled? — Give some account of their proceedings.

The termination of hostilities in the northern part of the state was attended by a revival of the controversy relative to the New Hampshire Grants. Delegates from the inhabitants of the Grants having assembled at Westminster in January, 1777, passed a resolution absolving all allegiance to the government of New York, and declaring that district an independent state, to be distinguished by the name of Vermont.

They then enclosed a copy of the declaration to Congress with a petition that it might be received, that the district therein described might be ranked among the free and independent American States, and their delegates be admitted to a seat in Congress.

Application was also made, by the New York Committee of safety, to Congress; stating that by the influence of certain designing men, a part of the state had been prevailed on to revolt, and disavow the authority of its legislature, and requesting that body to discountenance these disorderly proceedings. In another communication to Congress, March 1st, they represent, "that they depend upon the justice of that honorable house, to adopt every wise and salutary expedient, to suppress the mischiefs that must ensue that state and to the general confederacy from the unjust and pernicious projects of such of the inhabitants of New York, as merely from selfish and interested motives, have fomented this dangerous insurrection.

Congress proceeded to act on these communications in June, and, after several adjournments, passed resolutions, disapproving of the proceedings of the inhabitants of the Grants; and their petition to be received as an independent state, and their delegates admitted to a seat in Congress, was dismissed. The inhabitants of the Grants, however, still persisted in their opposition to the govern-

---

What is said of the controversy relative to the Grants?  
*Give some further account of the proceedings.*

ment of New York, and proceeded to draw up a constitution for the new state, and to establish a regular form of government.

SEC. II. The success which had attended the Americans in the campaign of the preceding year, placed them on higher ground and opened new resources to their view. The capture of Burgoyne laid the foundation for the acknowledgment of their independence abroad, and for acquiring the assistance of foreign nations.

On the sixth of February, a treaty of commerce and alliance was concluded between the commissioners of the United States and Louis XVI. of France. The arrival of a French fleet, early in July, with supplies of men and military stores to cooperate against the enemy, gave powerful aid to the American cause.

The commissioners in behalf of the United States had been, for more than a year, residing at Paris to accomplish this important object. During this period their prospects of success had constantly varied according to the aspect of American affairs. The result of the American struggle was yet too doubtful, for that country to embroil herself in war with Great Britain. The capture of the British army at Saratoga gave indications of the ultimate triumph of the American arms, and decided the wavering policy of the French court.

"In the treaty of alliance it was declared, that if war should break out between France and England during the existence of that with the United States, it should be made a common cause, and that neither of the contracting parties should conclude either truce or peace, with

---

What is said of the success of the military operations the preceding year?—What treaty was concluded?

*Give some account of the negotiations.—What was stipulated in the treaty?*

Great Britain, without the formal consent of the other first obtained; and they mutually engaged, not to lay down their arms until the independence of the United States shall have been formally, or tacitly, assured by the treaty or treaties, that should terminate the war."

SEC. III. On receiving intelligence of the alliance of America with France, the British evacuated Philadelphia, and concentrated the royal army at New York. The Americans encamped at White Plains, where they remained till late in autumn. The operations of the war in this quarter, the present year, were not attended with any important achievements.

Upon the termination of the campaign of 1777, the British army had retired to winter quarters at Philadelphia, and the Americans at Valley Forge. On the 18th of June the royal army crossed the Delaware, into New Jersey, and continued their retreat towards New York. They were attacked by Gen. Washington at Monmouth on the 28th, and a severe engagement ensued, in which the Americans obtained the advantage. Night only separated the two armies, and Gen. Washington resolved, the next day, to renew the attack. About midnight, the British general drew off his troops with such perfect silence, that their escape was not discovered until morning, when the Americans declined the pursuit. The British made good their retreat to New York, and the Americans withdrew towards the Hudson.

The French fleet, consisting of twelve ships of the line, and six frigates, commanded by Count D'Estaing arrived off Newport the 1st of July, to act in concert with the Americans in an attempt on Rhode Island. Lord Howe, at the same time arrived with his fleet from New York; and instead of cooperating with the Americans, D'Estaing went out to give him battle. A storm

---

What measures were taken by the British, on hearing of this alliance?—What is said of the operations of the war?

*What is said of the action at Monmouth?—Of the French fleet?*

separated the fleets, and D'Estaing sailed for Boston to repair his vessels, some skirmishing took place between the Americans and the British, but nothing decisive was effected. The siege of Newport was soon after raised, and the Americans retired.

On the 28th of August, the British army made an excursion up the Hudson, moving in strong force on each side of the river. Receiving intelligence, that Col. Baylor with a regiment of American cavalry had taken quarters at Tappan, they devised a plan for cutting them off. A party, detached for this purpose under the command of Gen. Gray, completely surprised the whole regiment, as they lay asleep. Out of one hundred and four privates, sixty seven were killed, wounded, and taken prisoners.

The attempts of the British had thus far been directed chiefly against the northern states. They now formed the plan of invading the southern states, and that quarter became the principal theatre of their offensive operations. In November, Sir Henry Clinton sent a squadron with about two thousand men to Georgia. After an engagement, in which the British were victorious, Savannah, the capital, and with it, the state of Georgia itself, fell into the hands of the enemy.

**SEC. IV. 1779.** In the campaign of the present year, nothing decisive was effected. The British attempted no enterprise of any importance, and appear to have aimed at little more, than to plunder and devastate the unprotected sections of the country. In these predatory incursions, many acts of cruelty were committed upon the inhabitants, and an immense amount of public and private property destroyed. While the enemy were committing these depredations, the main body of the American army

---

— *Of the affair at Tappan?—What plan was now formed by the British?*

iv. What is said of the campaign of '79?

was concentrated near West Point, for the protection of that important fortress.

In May, a naval and land force, commanded by Sir George Collier and Gen. Matthews, made a descent upon Virginia, and made extensive depredations in the vicinity of Norfolk. A similar force was sent under Gov. Tryon to ravage the sea-board of Connecticut. New Haven was plundered; East Haven, Fairfield, Norwalk and Green Farms were wantonly destroyed. At New Haven, an aged citizen, who labored under a natural inability to speak, had his tongue cut out by one of the royal army. Women were insulted, abused, and threatened, while their apparel was taken from them. Even an infant was robbed of its clothing, while a bayonet was pointed at the breast of its mother.

SEC. v. In the spring of the present year, the Americans had commenced the construction of strong works at Verplank's Neck, and Stoney Point, situated on nearly opposite points of land, the first on the east, the other on the west side of the Hudson. These positions being of great importance to the Americans, in keeping open an easy communication between the northern and southern states, Gen. Clinton resolved upon their seizure, which he successfully executed on the 30th of May.

Commodore Collier conducted the squadron that ascended the river, Gen. Vaughan the column of the right, which landed on the eastern bank, a little below Verplank's, and Clinton, in person, the column of the left, which he disembarked on the western bank below Stoney Point. The Americans finding the enemy so near, and not being prepared to receive him, evacuated Stoney Point, where they were soon replaced by the royal troops.

At Verplank's the Americans resolved to resist, and

---

*Give some account of the depredations of the British.*

v. What enterprise of the British in May?

had erected on this point a small, but strong and complete work, Fort la Fayette, which was defended by artillery and a small garrison. It was, however, unfortunately commanded by the heights of Stoney Point, upon which the English, by their exertions during the night, had planted a battery of heavy cannon, and another of mortars. Early on the following morning, they opened a tempest of fire upon Fort la Fayette. The attack was supported in front by Commodore Collier, who advanced with his galleys and gun boats within reach of the fort; and Gen. Vaughan, having made a circuit through the hills, at length arrived, and closely invested it on the land side. The garrison seeing all possibility of relief now cut off, and their fire totally overwhelmed and lost in the magnitude of that, which they received, surrendered at discretion on the following morning. Gen. Clinton gave directions for completing the works at Stoney Point, and, to cover these operations, encamped his army at Philipsburgh, about half way between Verplank's and New York.\*

SEC. vi. When it was ascertained, that the British had put the posts at Verplank's and Stoney Point in the highest state of defence, Gen. Washington formed the design of recovering them from the possession of the enemy. Stoney Point, now plentifully supplied with all the munitions of war, and garrisoned by about six hundred men, was carried by direct assault, on the 16th of July. The reduction of this fortress was one of the most bold and daring enterprises, which occurred during the war.

Gen. Washington resolved to attempt the surprise of

\* Botta.

---

*Give some account of it.—What directions did Sir Henry Clinton give?*

vi. What plan was formed by Gen. Washington?—What was the condition of Stoney Point at this time?—When, and in what manner was it taken?

Stoney Point by attacking the works on the right and left flanks at the same instant, and entrusted the execution of this plan to Gen. Wayne. The troops destined for this enterprise were assembled on the 15th at Sandy Beach, fourteen miles from Stoney Point. They moved off at noon, and having accomplished their march over high mountains, through deep morasses, difficult defiles, and roads extremely bad and narrow, arrived about eight o'clock in the evening, within a mile of the enemy.

Gen. Wayne then halted to reconnoitre the works, and observe the state of the garrison. The English, however, did not perceive him. He formed his corps in two columns, and put himself at the head of the right. It was preceded by a vanguard of an hundred and fifty picked men, commanded by a brave and adventurous Frenchman, Lieut. Col. Fleury. This vanguard was guided by a forlorn hope of about twenty, led by Lieut. Gibbon. The column on the left, conducted by Maj. Stewart, had a similar vanguard, also preceded by a forlorn hope under Lieut. Knox. These forlorn hopes, among other offices, were particularly intended to remove the abattis and other obstructions, which lay in the way of the succeeding troops. Gen. Wayne directed both columns to march in order and silence, with unloaded muskets and fixed bayonets.

At midnight, they arrived under the walls of the fort. The two columns attacked upon the flanks, while Maj. Murfee engaged the attention of the garrison by a feint in front. An unexpected obstacle presented itself; the deep morass which covered the works, was at this time overflowed by the tide. The English opened a most tremendous fire of musketry, and of cannon loaded with grape-shot, but neither the inundated morass, nor a double palisade, nor the bastioned ramparts, nor the storm of fire that was poured from them, could arrest the impetuosity of the Americans; they opened their way with the bayonet, prostrated whatever opposed them, scaled the fort, and the two columns met in the centre of the works.

Gen. Wayne received a contusion in the head, by a

musket ball as he passed the last abattis. Col. Fleury struck with his own hand the royal standard that waved upon the walls. Of the forlorn hope of Gibbon, seventeen out of twenty perished in the attack. The English lost upwards of six hundred men in killed and prisoners. The Americans abstained from pillage and all disorder; a conduct the more worthy to be commended, as they had still fresh in mind the ravages and butcheries, which the enemy had so recently committed in Connecticut and Virginia. Humanity imparted new effulgence to the victory, which valor had obtained.\*

The enterprise against Verplank's was entrusted to Gen. Howe, and miscarried for the want of artillery, and implements for the construction of bridges, by which only the place was approachable. Intelligence was in the mean time received of the approach of a large body of the enemy, and the Americans not deeming it safe to hazard a battle, after bringing off the artillery and stores of the fort at Stoney Point, with the garrison, dismantled the fortifications, and retired.

SEC. VII. The Americans were emboldened by the success of the enterprise against Stoney Point, and continued frequently to harass the outposts of the royal army. Maj. Lee, on the 19th of July, completely surprised the British garrison at Powle's Hook. He attacked the place with a detachment of about three hundred, and, with the loss of only two men, brought off one hundred and fiftynine prisoners.

SEC. VIII. In August, Gen. Sullivan conducted an expedition against the Indians of the Six Nations, who, with the exception of the

\* Botta.

---

*What is said of the enterprise against Verplank's? — What intelligence was received? — What measures were taken in consequence of this?*

VII. What enterprise was soon after undertaken?

VIII. What expedition in August?

Oneidas and a few others, had taken part with the enemy. The enterprise was successful, and their country laid waste.

Other expeditions were during the present year conducted against the Indians. Col. Van Shaick marched from Fort Schuyler in April, with fifty-five men, and burned the whole Onondaga settlement, consisting of about fifty houses, without the loss of a single man; a considerable number of the Indians were killed and taken prisoners.

The Indians of the Six Nations had been induced by the presents and promises of Sir John Johnson, with the desire of plunder, to invade the frontiers; and wherever they went, they carried slaughter and devastation. To put a stop to these incursions, Congress directed Gen. Sullivan with a strong detachment to proceed against them.

The Indians, on hearing of the projected expedition, took possession of an elevated ground, and fortified it with judgment. Gen. Sullivan commenced a cannonade against them in their works, which they sustained for more than two hours. They at length gave way, and, when their trenches were forced, fled with precipitation. The victorious army penetrated into the very heart of their country, and laid it desolate. Their villages, with their detached habitations, their cornfields, fruit trees, and gardens, were indiscriminately destroyed.\*

Different parts of the state suffered severely from the depredations of detached parties of Indians. In July, a party of Indians, with some white men under Brandt, burned the Minisink settlement, and made several prisoners. In August, the Indians with their tory associates

\* Holmes' Annals.

---

What other is mentioned?

Give some account of Sullivan's expedition.

destroyed the settlements at Canajohary, and burned a number of houses at Schoharie, and Norman's Creek.

In October, these irruptions were renewed. Stone Arabia, and several other places were attacked, and Schoharie afresh. A great extent of country about the Mohawk was laid waste, and many of the settlers were killed, or made prisoners.

Much public, as well as private embarrassment, was at this period experienced from the depreciation of the bills of credit. Congress had emitted these bills to an immense amount, which was not a little increased by the enemy, who counterfeited the bills, and circulated their forgeries among the states. This depreciation continued to increase, until the bills of credit, or the "continental currency," as it was called, became of little or no value.

**SEC. IX. 1780.** The British continued to occupy their posts in the city of New York, and its vicinity; but no important enterprises were effected in this quarter. During the present and the succeeding year, the operations of the war were conducted chiefly in the southern states, and were attended with various success.

Towards the close of the campaign of '79, Sir Henry Clinton embarked with a force of above seven thousand men for the reduction of Charleston in South Carolina, which fell into the hands of the enemy on the 12th of May, 1780. Gen. Gates was soon after appointed to command the southern division of the American army, and on the 16th of August came in contact with the British under Lord Cornwallis at Camden; a sanguinary conflict ensued, in which the British were victorious.

A detachment of the enemy, consisting of five thousand men from the northern division, under Gen. Kniphhausen, made an incursion into New Jersey in June, plundered

---

*Of the depredations of the Indians?—What is said of the bills of credit?*

ix. What is said of the campaign of 1780?

*What operations at the south?—Give some account of the depredations of the royal army.*

the country, and wantonly burned several villages. The spirits of the Americans in the midst of these misfortunes were revived by the arrival of M. de Ternay from France, early in July, with a squadron of seven sail of the line, five frigates, and five smaller armed vessels, with several transports, and a reinforcement of six thousand men, all under the command of Lieut. Gen. Count de Rochambeau.

SEC. x. A remarkable instance of treachery occurred the present year in the northern division of the American army. Gen. Arnold, having solicited, and obtained the command of West Point, entered into negotiations with Sir Henry Clinton to deliver that important fortress into the hands of the enemy. The plot was however, fortunately discovered seasonably to prevent its execution. Arnold escaped to the enemy, and Andre, the agent of the British, was taken, condemned, and executed, as a spy.

To facilitate the correspondence, a vessel, the Vulture, proceeded up the Hudson, and took a station as near West Point, as practicable, without exciting suspicion. On the night of September the 21st, Andre went on shore in a boat, which was sent for him, and met Arnold at the beach. They remained here, until it was too late for Andre to return to the Vulture, when Arnold conducted him within the American lines for concealment. During the ensuing day, the Vulture found it necessary to change her position, and Andre, being unable to get on board, attempted to return to New York, in disguise, by land.

Receiving a passport from Arnold, under the name of Anderson, he passed the guards and outposts, without suspicion. At Tarrytown, thirty miles from New York, he was met by three militia soldiers,—John Paulding, David

---

*What fleet arrived?*

x. What occurred at West Point?—What prevented the execution of the plot?

Williams, and Isaac Van Wert. Showing his passport, he was suffered to proceed. Immediately after this, one of these men thinking, that he observed something singular in the appearance of the traveller, called him back. Andre asked them where they were from. "From down below," they replied, intending to say, from New York. Too frank to suspect a snare, Andre immediately answered, "and so am I."

Andre was immediately arrested, when he declared himself a British officer, and offered them his watch and a sum of gold to be released. The soldiers, though poor and obscure, were not to be bribed. They rejected his offers, and conducted him to their commanding officer, Lieut. Col. Jameson.

A board of officers was summoned to decide upon his condition and punishment, and during his trial, every indulgence was granted, of which his case would admit. The board unanimously pronounced him a *spy*, and declared, that according to the laws of nations, he ought to suffer death. Every possible effort was made in his favor, but the interests of the country imperiously demanded, that the decision of the board should be executed. When apprised of the sentence of death, Maj. Andre addressed a letter to Gen. Washington with a request, that he might receive "the death of a soldier."

"Buoyed above the terror of death," said he, "by the consciousness of a life devoted to honorable pursuits, and stained with no action that can give me remorse, I trust that the request that I make to your excellency at this serious period, and which is to soften my last moments, will not be rejected. Sympathy towards a soldier will surely induce your excellency, and a military friend, to adapt the mode of my death to the feelings of a man of honor. Let me hope, sir, that if aught in my character impresses you with esteem towards me, as the victim of policy and resentment, I shall experience the operation of those feelings in your breast by being informed that I am not to die on a gibbet."

Gen. Washington held a consultation with his officers

on the propriety of Maj. Andre's request to be shot; but it was deemed necessary to deny it, and, on the 2d of October, this gallant, but unfortunate young man, expired on the gallows, universally lamented, both by friends and foes.

Congress voted to Paulding, Williams, and Van Wert, as a reward for their virtuous and patriotic conduct, to each an annuity of two hundred dollars, and a silver medal, on one side of which was a shield with the inscription, "fidelity," on the other, the motto, "*vincit amor patriæ*,"—the love of country conquers. Maj. Andre had been injudiciously permitted by Jameson to write to Arnold, who took refuge on board the Vulture, and escaped to New York, where he received the commission of brigadier general, and the sum of ten thousand pounds sterling, as the price of his dishonor.

Soon after Arnold entered the service of the enemy, he took the command of an enterprise against Virginia, and signified his zeal in the cause he had espoused by committing depredations against the inhabitants of that state.

Sec. xi. When it was ascertained, that Arnold had taken refuge with the enemy at New York, Gen. Washington made exertions to take him, and bring him to the reward of his treachery. The design was, however, frustrated by the embarkation of Arnold for Virginia.

§ "Having matured the plan, Washington sent to Maj. Lee to repair to head quarters, at Tappan, on the Hudson, 'I have sent for you,' said Gen. Washington, 'in the expectation that you have some one in your corps, who is willing to undertake a delicate and hazardous project. Whoever comes forward will confer great obligations upon me personally, and, in behalf of the United States, I will reward him amply. No time is to be lost; he must proceed, if possible, tonight. I intend to seize Arnold, and save Andre.'

"Maj. Lee named a sergeant-major of his corps, by the name of

---

*What reward was voted by Congress?—What course was taken by Arnold?*

*What enterprise was conducted by Arnold?*

*For what did Gen. Washington make exertions?—What frustrated this design?*

Champe—a native of Virginia, a man full of bone and muscle—with a countenance grave, thoughtful, and taciturn—of tried courage, and inflexible perseverance.

“Champe was sent for by Maj. Lee, and the plan proposed. This was for him to desert—to escape to New York—to appear friendly to the enemy—to watch Arnold, and, upon some fit opportunity, with the assistance of some one whom Champe could trust, to seize him, and conduct him to a place on the river, appointed, where boats should be in readiness to bear them away.

“Champe listened to the plan attentively—but, with the spirit of a man of honor and integrity, replied—‘that it was not danger nor difficulty, that deterred him from immediately accepting the proposal, but the *ignominy of desertion*, and the *hypocrisy of enlisting with the enemy!*’

“To these objections, Lee replied, that although he would appear to desert, yet as he obeyed the call of his commander in chief, his departure could not be considered as criminal, and that, if he suffered in reputation, for a time, the matter would one day be explained to his credit. As to the second objection, it was urged, that to bring such a man as Arnold to justice—loaded with guilt as he was—and to save Andre—so young—so accomplished—so beloved—to achieve so much good in the cause of his country—was more than sufficient to balance a wrong, existing only in appearance.

“The objections of Champe were at length surmounted, and he accepted the service. It was now eleven o’clock at night. With his instructions in his pocket, the sergeant returned to camp, and, taking his cloak, valice, and orderly book, drew his horse from the picket and mounted, putting himself upon fortune.

“Scarcely had half an hour elapsed, before Capt. Carnes, the officer of the day, waited upon Lee, who was vainly attempting to rest, and informed him, that one of the patrol had fallen in with a dragoon, who, being challenged, put spurs to his horse and escaped. Lee, hoping to conceal the flight of Champe, or at least to delay pursuit, complained of fatigue, and told the captain that the patrol had probably mistaken a countryman for a dragoon. Carnes, however, was not thus to be quieted; and he withdrew to assemble his corps. On examination, it was found that Champe was absent. The Captain now returned, and acquainted Lee with the discovery, adding that he had detached a party to pursue the deserter, and begged the major’s written orders.

“After making as much delay as practicable, without exciting suspicion, Lee delivers his orders—in which he directed the party to take Champe if possible. “Bring him alive,” said he, “that he may suffer in the presence of the army; but kill him if he resists, or if he escapes after being taken.”

“A shower of rain fell soon after Champe’s departure, which enabled the pursuing dragoons to take the trail of his horse, his shoes, in common with those of the horses of the army, being made in a peculiar form, and each having a private mark, which was to be seen in the path.

“Middleton, the leader of the pursuing party, left the camp a few minutes past twelve, so that Champe had the start of but little more

than an hour—a period by far shorter than had been contemplated. During the night, the dragoons were often delayed in the necessary halts to examine the road; but, on the coming of morning, the impression of the horse's shoes was so apparent, that they pressed on with rapidity. Some miles above Bergen, a village three miles north of New York, on the opposite side of the Hudson, on ascending a hill, Champe was descried, not more than half a mile distant. Fortunately, Champe descried his pursuers at the same moment, and, conjecturing their object, put spurs to his horse, with the hope of escape.

"By taking a different road, Champe was, for a time, lost sight of—but, on approaching the river, he was again descried. Aware of his danger, he now lashed his valice, containing his clothes and orderly book, to his shoulders, and prepared himself to plunge into the river, if necessary. Swift was his flight, and swift the pursuit. Middleton and his party were within a few hundred yards, when Champe threw himself from his horse and plunged into the river, calling aloud upon some British galleys, at no great distance, for help. A boat was instantly despatched to the serjeant's assistance, and a fire commenced upon the pursuers. Champe was taken on board, and soon after carried to New York, with a letter from the captain of the galley, stating the past scene, all of which he had witnessed.

"The pursuers having recovered the sergeant's horse and cloak, returned to camp, where they arrived about three o'clock the next day. On their appearance with the well known horse, the soldiers made the air resound with the acclamations that the scoundrel was killed. The agony of Lee, for a moment, was past description, lest the faithful, honorable, intrepid Champe had fallen. But the truth soon relieved his fears, and he repaired to Washington to impart to him the success, thus far, of his plan.

"Soon after the arrival of Champe in New York, he was sent to Sir Henry Clinton, who treated him kindly, but detained him more than an hour in asking him questions, to answer some of which, without exciting suspicion, required all the art the sergeant was master of. He succeeded, however, and Sir Henry gave him a couple of guineas, and recommended him to Arnold, who was wishing to procure American recruits. Arnold received him kindly, and proposed to him to join his legion; Champe, however, expressed his wish to retire from war; but assured the general, that if he should change his mind, he would enlist.

"Champe found means to communicate to Lee an account of his adventures; but, unfortunately, he could not succeed in taking Arnold, as was wished, before the execution of Andre. Ten days before Champe brought his project to a conclusion, Lee received from him his final communication, appointing the third subsequent night for a party of dragoons to meet him at Hoboken, opposite New York, when he hoped to deliver Arnold to the officers.

"Champe had enlisted into Arnold's legion, from which time he had every opportunity, he could wish, to attend to the habits of the general. He discovered that it was his custom to return home about twelve every night, and that, previously to going to bed, he

always visited the garden. During this visit, the conspirators were to seize him, and, being prepared with a gag they were to apply the same instantly.

" Adjoining the house in which Arnold resided, and in which it was designed to seize and gag him, Champe had taken off several of the palings and replaced them, so that with ease, and without noise, he could readily open his way to the adjoining alley. Into this alley he intended to convey his prisoner, aided by his companion, one of two associates, who had been introduced by the friend, to whom Champe had been originally made known by letter from the commander in chief, and with whose aid and counsel, he had so far conducted the enterprise. His other associate was, with the boat, prepared at one of the wharves on the Hudson river, to receive the party.

" Champe and his friend intended to place themselves each under Arnold's shoulder, and thus to bear him through the most unfrequent alleys and streets to the boat, representing Arnold, in case of being questioned, as a drunken soldier, whom they were conveying to the guard-house.

" When arrived at the boat, the difficulties would be all surmounted, there being no danger nor obstacle in passing to the Jersey shore. These particulars, as soon as made known to Lee, were communicated to the commander in chief, who was highly gratified with the much desired intelligence. He desired Major Lee to meet Champe, and to take care that Arnold should not be hurt.

" The day arrived, and Lee, with a party of accoutred horses, (one for Arnold, one for the sergeant, and the third for his associate, who was to assist in securing Arnold,) left the camp, never doubting the success of the enterprise, from the tenor of the last received communication. The party reached Hoboken about midnight, where they were concealed in the adjoining wood—Lee, with three dragoons, stationing himself near the shore of the river.—Hour after hour passed, but no boat approached.

" At length the day broke, and the major retired to his party, and, with his led horses, returned to the camp, where he proceeded to headquarters to inform the general of the much lamented disappointment, as mortifying, as inexplicable. Washington, having perused Champe's plan and communication, had indulged the presumption, that, at length, the object of his keen and constant pursuit was sure of execution, and did not dissemble the joy which such a conviction produced. He was chagrined at the issue, and apprehended that his faithful sergeant must have been detected in the last scene of his tedious and difficult enterprise.

" In a few days, Lee received an anonymous letter from Champe's patron and friend, informing him, that on the day preceding the night fixed for the execution of the plot, Arnold had removed his quarters to another part of the town, to superintend the embarkation of troops, preparing, as was rumored, for an expedition to be directed by himself; and that the American legion, consisting chiefly of American deserters, had been transferred from their barracks to one of the transports, it being apprehended that if left on shore, until the expedition was ready, many of them might desert.

" Thus it happened that John Champe, instead of crossing the Hud-

son that night, was safely deposited on board one of the fleet of transports, from whence he never departed, until the troops under Arnold landed in Virginia. Nor was he able to escape from the British army, until after the junction of Lord Cornwallis at Petersburg, when he deserted; and, proceeding high up into Virginia, he passed into North Carolina, near the Saura towns, and, keeping in the friendly districts of that state, safely joined the army soon after it had passed the Congaree, in pursuit of Lord Rawdon.

"His appearance excited extreme surprise among his former comrades, which was not a little increased, when they saw the cordial reception he met with from the late major, now Lieutenant Col. Lee. His whole story was soon known to the corps, which reproduced the love and respect of officers and soldiers, heretofore invariably entertained for the sergeant, heightened by universal admiration of his late daring and arduous attempt.

"Champe was introduced to Gen. Greene, who very cheerfully complied with the promise made by the commander in chief, so far as in his power; and, having provided the sergeant with a good horse and money for his journey, sent him to Gen. Washington, who munificently anticipated every desire of the sergeant, and presented him with a discharge from further service, lest he might, in the vicissitudes of war, fall into the hands of the enemy, when, if recognized, he was sure to die on a gibbet.

"We shall only add, respecting the after life of this interesting adventurer, that when Gen. Washington was called by President Adams, in 1798, to the command of the army, prepared to defend the country, against French hostility, he sent to Lieut. Col. Lee, to inquire for Champe; being determined to bring him into the field at the head of a company of infantry. Lee sent to Loudon county, Virginia, where Champe settled after his discharge from the army; when he learned that the gallant soldier had removed to Kentucky, where he soon after died."\*

SEC. XII. 1781. The southern states still continued to be the principal theatre of military operations. The present campaign in that department was distinguished by several important enterprises.

A detachment of the enemy under Col. Tarleton, came in contact with the Americans under Gen. Morgan, on the 17th of January, when was fought the spirited battle of the Cowpens, in which the Americans obtained a decided triumph. The British lost in killed, wounded, and taken

\* Lee's Memoirs.

prisoners, above six hundred ; the loss of the Americans amounted to only twelve killed, and sixty wounded. At the battle of Guilford, March 8th, victory decided in favor of the British. On the 25th of April, the Americans, under Gen. Greene, attacked the enemy under Lord Rawdon, at Camden ; but after an obstinate engagement, were compelled to retire. Although victory decided in favor of the British, the result was, on the whole, favorable to the American cause. Gen. Lee, in the mean time, took possession of an important post, near the confluence of the Congaree and Santee rivers ; and Lord Rawdon, soon after, evacuated Camden and the whole line of British posts, with the exception of Charleston and Ninety Six.

Gen. Greene, the latter part of May, made an unsuccessful assault upon Ninety Six. The enemy, however, soon after abandoned this post, and encamped at the Eutaw Springs. Here, on the 8th of September, the Americans advanced upon them, and a battle ensued, which was sustained with great bravery on both sides. After this battle, in which the loss of the British was double that of the Americans, the enemy retired to Charleston.

Early in the present season, a plan was formed for laying siege to New York, in concert with a French fleet expected on the coast in August. The American troops were accordingly concentrated at Kingsbridge, and all things prepared for a vigorous siege. In the midst of these preparations, Gen. Washington received information, that the expected fleet, under Couut de Grasse, would arrive in the Chesapeake, and that this, instead of New York, was the place of its destination. Disappointed in not having the cooperation of this force, Washington now changed his plan of operations, and directed his attention to the movements of the enemy in Virginia.

After the battle of Guilford, Cornwallis, leaving South Carolina in charge of Lord Rawdon, marched into Virginia. The Marquis de la Fayette, with three thousand men, hastened to oppose him ; but the British receiving a reinforcement, it was not deemed prudent to risk an en-

---

*What plan was formed early the present season, and what prevented its execution? — What is said of the operations in Virginia?*

gagement. After several ineffectual attempts to compel the Marquis to a battle, Cornwallis retired to Yorktown, near the mouth of York river, where he encamped, and erected fortifications.

The fleet under Count de Grasse having previously arrived, it was resolved to make an attempt upon Cornwallis; and the combined armies advanced upon Yorktown the last of September. Count de Grasse, with the fleet, sailed up the mouth of York river, to cut off from the enemy all communication of succor or retreat.

SEC. XIII. All preparations having been duly made, Yorktown was regularly invested on the 6th of October. The siege was sustained with the most determined resolution, and, on the 19th, the place was compelled to surrender with above seven thousand prisoners of war. The capture of Cornwallis decided the triumph of the American cause. After this event, no further enterprises of any importance were attempted, and a few skirmishes alone indicated the continuance of the war.

During the siege of Yorktown, Gen. Arnold conducted an enterprise against New London, in his *native state*. This expedition was undertaken with the view of effecting a diversion in favor of Cornwallis; and was signalized by the greatest atrocities. Forts Trumbull and Griswold, below New London, on the Thames, were taken, and the greater part of that town laid in ashes.

SEC. XIV. The British government now began to abandon all hope of conquering America, and frequent motions were made in the British parliament for putting an end to the war.

---

XIII. What place was invested by the Americans in October?—What is said of the siege and surrender?—Of the capture of Cornwallis?

What enterprise was undertaken during the siege of Yorktown, and for what purpose?—By what was it signalized?

The provisional articles of peace, between the two countries, were signed by their respective commissioners, at Paris, on the 30th of November, 1782. On the 19th of April, 1783, a formal proclamation of the cessation of hostilities was made throughout the army; and the definitive treaty, acknowledging the colonies to be Free and Independent States, was signed on the 30th of September. The British evacuated New York on the 25th of November, and the Americans took possession the same day.

The independence of the United States had been previously acknowledged by most of the European governments. It was acknowledged by Holland in 1782; by Sweden in February, 1783; by Denmark in the same month; by Spain in March, and by Russia in July.

In October, Congress issued a proclamation for disbanding the armies of the United States, and giving them the thanks of their country "for their long, eminent and faithful services." On the 2d of October, Gen. Washington issued his farewell orders to the army, which were replete with salutary advice respecting their future conduct, and with affectionate wishes for their present and future happiness. His closing words were,

"And being now about to conclude these my last public orders, to take my ultimate leave, in a short time, of the military character, and to bid a final adieu to the armies, I have so long had the honor to command, I can only again offer in your behalf, my recommendations to

---

xiv. When, and in what place were the provisional articles of peace signed? — When was the cessation of hostilities proclaimed? — What treaty was signed, and at what time? — When did the British evacuate New York?

*By whom was the independence of the United States previously acknowledged? — What proclamation was made by Congress in October? — When did Washington issue his farewell orders? — What can you say of them?*

your grateful country, and my prayers to the God of armies. May ample justice be done you here, and may the choicest of heaven's favors, both here and hereafter, attend those, who, under the divine auspices, have secured innumerable blessings for others. With these wishes, and this benediction, your commander in chief is about to retire from service. The curtain of separation will soon be drawn, and the military scene to him will be closed for ever."

To prevent every disorder, which might otherwise ensue, on the day appointed for the evacuation of New York, the American troops under the command of Gen. Knox marched from Haerlem to the Bowery lane in the morning. At one o'clock the British troops retired from the posts in the Bowery, and the Americans marched forward and took possession of the city.

When this was effected, Gen. Knox and a number of citizens on horseback rode to the Bowery to receive their excellencies, Gen. Washington and Gov. Clinton, who, with their suites, made their public entry into the city; followed by the lieutenant governor, and the members of the council, which had been appointed for the temporary government of the southern district, Gen. Knox, and the officers of the army,—citizens on horseback—the speaker of the assembly, and citizens on foot. The governor gave a public dinner, at which the commander in chief, and other general officers were present. The arrangements were so well made and executed, that the most admirable tranquillity succeeded through the day and night. On Monday the governor gave an elegant entertainment to the French ambassador, Chevalier de la Luzerne. Gen. Washington, and the principal officers of the army and state of New York were present. On the evening of Tuesday, magnificent fireworks were exhibited at the Bowling-green in celebration of the definitive treaty of peace. They were commenced, by a dove descending with the *olive branch*, and setting fire to a marron battery.

A few days after, the principal officers of the army as-

---

*What arrangements were made, when the British evacuated New York?*

sembled to take leave of their commander in chief. When about to bid them adieu, the General calling for a glass of wine, thus addressed them.—“With a heart full of love and gratitude, I now take leave of you; I most devoutly wish, that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy, as your former ones have been glorious and honorable.” “The officers then approached him in succession, and he affectionately bade adieu to each. They followed in silent procession to the barge, which was to bear him across the Hudson; on entering which, he waved his hat in mute adieu to the companions of his toils and his glory. He proceeded amidst the demonstrations of affection and respect, of gratitude and joy, to Annapolis, where Congress was then sitting, and resigned the commission, which he had so long held under their authority.”

“Here the scene was so affecting, that neither he, nor the president of Congress, were fully able to preserve their powers of utterance. After resigning his commission, he hastened to Mount Vernon; to the bosom of his family, and the delights of domestic life.”



## CHAP. XIV.

FROM 1783 TO 1812.

*Condition of the country at the close of the war.*  
*Organization of the General Government.*  
*Internal concerns of the State. Settlement of the Vermont controversy. Agriculture, Arts, Manufactures, and Commerce. Civil Policy.*  
*Attention of the Legislature directed to the subject of Internal Navigation.*

SEC. I. The Americans had, for eight years, been subjected to the miseries of a devastating

---

*What did Gen. Washington do soon after?*

war, in their attempts to break the yoke of foreign oppression, and to establish a free and independent government. They had been sustained, during this arduous contest, by high hopes of future prosperity, and had anticipated, in the attainment of this object, every other political blessing, as its natural attendant. The object was accomplished, and *Thirteen Independent States* arose from the British American Colonies. It now remained for them to test, by experience, the excellence and permanence of their new institutions.

A short period was, however, sufficient to evince the weakness of the existing system, and its incompetence to subserve the great objects for which it was instituted. The authority of the federal government was found to be too limited to sustain, in a proper manner, the external relations of the country, and wholly inadequate to regulate and control the local and conflicting interests of the separate states.

At the termination of the war, the debts of the Union amounted to more than forty millions of dollars. Congress, though authorized by the articles of confederation to borrow money and issue bills of credit, had not the ability to redeem those bills, or the powers requisite for raising a revenue. After an ineffectual attempt to obtain this power from the several states, even the interest of the public debt remained unpaid, and the public credit was in great measure destroyed.

---

1. What attempts had been made by the Americans?—What is said of their hopes and anticipations?—How had they succeeded in the attainment of this object?—What now remained for them?—What is said of the existing system?—Of the authority of the federal government?

*What is said of the debts of the Union?—Of the authority of Congress?—Of the public credit?*

The restrictions imposed by Great Britain on the trade with the West Indies began seriously to affect the commercial interests of the United States. Congress had not the power to retaliate by passing similar acts against Great Britain, nor would the separate states, always jealous of each other, concur in any measure to compel that government to relax. These embarrassments tended to hasten a radical change in the political system of the United States.

SEC. II. In 1787,\* commissioners from all the States of the Union, excepting Rhode Island, assembled at Philadelphia, for the purpose of revising the federal system. The FEDERAL CONSTITUTION was presented to Congress on the 17th of September, and soon after sent to the several states for their consideration. It was adopted by the convention of the state of New York, the following year, by a majority of thirty to twentyfive votes.

The convention for revising the constitution resolved, that as soon as nine States should have ratified it, it should be carried into operation by Congress. After much opposition, it was, 1788, ratified by the conventions of eleven States. North Carolina and Rhode Island, at first, refused their assent, but afterwards acceded to it: the former, November, 1789; the latter, May, 1790.

The following is a copy of the constitution ratified by the states, with the several amendments, which have been subsequently made. The insertion of this article requires no apology.—Its adoption forms a most important era in our national history, and, probably at that period, was the only measure, which could have prevented the ultimate dissolution, and consequent ruin of the whole confederacy. To this constitution we look, as the bulwark of private right, and of pub-

\* May 19th.

---

*What affected the commercial interests of the country?—Why did not Congress retaliate?—What was the tendency of these embarrassments?*

II. For what were commissioners appointed in 1787?—What was the result?—When was the Constitution adopted by New York?

*What was resolved by the convention?—When was it ratified by eleven states?*

lic prosperity; and while it protects the peculiar privileges of the separate states, it constitutes the strength and security of the whole.—It forms the charter of our liberties, and should be familiar to all.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common-defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.

### SECTION I.

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

### SECTION II.

I. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

II. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained the age of twentyfive years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

III. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative; and, until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

IV. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

V. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker, and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

### SECTION III.

I. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

II. Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into

three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

III. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

IV. The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote unless they be equally divided.

V. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President pro tempore in the absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

VI. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

VII. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment according to law.

#### SECTION IV.

I. The times, places and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

II. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

#### SECTION V.

I. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

II. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behaviour, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds expel a member.

III. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

IV. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without

the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

#### SECTION VI.

I. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

II. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

#### SECTION VII.

I. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

II. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days, (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

III. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

#### SECTION VIII.

The Congress shall have power

I. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises; to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States.

II. To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

III. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes.

IV. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States.

V. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures.

VI. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

VII. To establish post offices and post roads.

VIII. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

IX. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court.

X. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations.

XI. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water.

XII. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years.

XIII. To provide and maintain a navy.

XIV. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

XV. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions.

XVI. To provide for organizing, arming and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia, according to the discipline prescribed by Congress.

XVII. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock yards, and other needful buildings:—and

XVIII. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

#### SECTION IX.

I. The migration or importation of such persons, as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

II. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

III. No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

IV. No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

V. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

VI. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

VII. No title of nobility shall be granted in the United States; and no person, holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince or foreign state.

#### SECTION X.

I. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

II. No state shall without the consent of Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of Congress. No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty on tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

### ARTICLE II.

#### SECTION I.

I. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

II. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

III. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by

ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list, the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice President.

IV. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

V. No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President, neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

VI. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation or inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

VII. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased or diminished during the period, for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

VIII. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the constitution of the United States.”

## SECTION II.

I. The President shall be commander in chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

II. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for and which shall be established by law. But the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

III. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

## SECTION III.

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures, as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

## SECTION IV.

The President, Vice President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

## ARTICLE III.

## SECTION I.

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behaviour, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

## SECTION II.

I. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity,

arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states, between a state and citizens of another state, between citizens of different states, between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

II. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

III. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trials shall be held in the state where the said crime shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place, or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

#### SECTION III.

I. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

II. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainer of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

### ARTICLE IV.

#### SECTION I.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

#### SECTION II.

I. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

II. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

III. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

## SECTION III.

I. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union, but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state ; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned as well as of the Congress.

II. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular state.

## SECTION IV.

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion ; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress : Provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

## ARTICLE VI.

I. All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution, as under the confederation.

II. This constitution and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof ; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land ; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, anything in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

III. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to support this constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required, as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

*Done in Convention by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eightyseven, and of the Independence of the United States of America, the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.*

<i>New Hampshire,</i>	{	John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman.
<i>Massachusetts,</i>	{	Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.
<i>Connecticut,</i>	{	William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.
<i>New York,</i>		Alexander Hamilton.
<i>New Jersey,</i>	{	William Livingston, David Brearley, William Paterson, Jonathan Dayton.
<i>Pennsylvania,</i>	{	Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.
<i>Delaware,</i>	{	George Read, Gunning Bedford, jun., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.
<i>Maryland,</i>	{	James McHenry, Daniel of St Thomas Jenifer, Daniel Carroll.
<i>Virginia,</i>	{	John Blair, James Madison, jun.
<i>North Carolina,</i>	{	William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.
<i>South Carolina.</i>	{	John Rutledge, Charles C. Pinkney, Charles Pinkney, Pierce Butler.
<i>Georgia,</i>	{	William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President.*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

## AMENDMENTS.

The following Amendments, having been adopted by three fourths of the several states, now constitute a part of the constitution. Ten of these articles, having been presented by Congress to the states in 1789, and subsequently ratified by three fourths of the states, were declared a part of the constitution in 1791. The thirteenth was adopted in 1798; and the fourteenth in 1804.

## ARTICLE I.

After the first enumeration required by the first article of the Constitution, there shall be one representative for every thirty thousand, until the number shall amount to one hundred, after which the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress, that there shall not be less than one hundred representatives, nor less than one representative for every forty thousand persons, until the number of representatives shall amount to two hundred, after which the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress, that there shall not be less than two hundred representatives, nor more than one representative for every fifty thousand persons.

## ARTICLE II.

No law varying the compensation for the services of the senators and representatives shall take effect, until an election of representatives shall have intervened.

## ARTICLE III.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

## ARTICLE IV.

A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

## ARTICLE V.

No soldier shall in time of peace be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

## ARTICLE VI.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

## ARTICLE VII.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

## ARTICLE VIII.

In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

## ARTICLE IX.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact, tried by a jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

## ARTICLE X.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

## ARTICLE XI.

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

## ARTICLE XII.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

## ARTICLE XIII.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

## ARTICLE XIV.

The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot, for President and Vice President, one of whom at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name, in their ballots, the person voted for as President, and, in distinct ballots, the person voted for as Vice President, and they shall make

distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such a majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice President, shall be the Vice President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice President—a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President, shall be eligible to that of Vice President of the United States.

#### ARTICLE XV.

If any citizen of the United States shall accept, claim, receive, or retain any title of nobility or honor; or shall without the consent of Congress, accept and retain any present, pension, office or emolument of any kind whatever, from any emperor, king, prince, or foreign power, such person shall cease to be a citizen of the United States, and shall be incapable of holding any office of trust or profit under them or either of them.

---

SEC. III. The more perfect organization of the federal system gave a new aspect to the political affairs of the country. Strength and unanimity now took the place of weakness and

disorder. A constitution of more ample powers gave new vigor and efficacy to the measures of the general government, and prepared the way for that unexampled prosperity, which has characterized every subsequent period of our national annals.

The first congress, under the new constitution, consisting of delegates from eleven states, was convened at New York, in 1789. Gen. George Washington was found to have been elected, by the unanimous suffrages of the citizens, to the office of President of the United States.

During Washington's administration, the people of the United States began to divide themselves into two great parties, according to the different opinions entertained, relative to the measures pursued by the general government. Those friendly to the views of the administration were termed *Federalists*; and those opposed to them, *Republicans*. In 1797, Washington retired from the office of President, and John Adams was elected as his successor. The parties now became more fully developed, party feeling became general, and party measures were prosecuted with great animosity. The federal party maintained the ascendancy until towards the close of Mr Adams's administration, when the republican party predominated.

SEC. IV. 1783. A general organization act was passed by the legislature, dividing the state into fourteen counties, which were subdivided into townships. The same success, which, at this and subsequent periods, characterized the general administration, also attended the internal affairs of the state. The government was

---

III. What influence had this change in the federal system on the political affairs of the country?

*When was the first congress convened?—Who was the first president?—What parties originated during his administration?—By whom was he succeeded?*

IV. What act was passed by the state legislature in 1783?—What is said of the internal affairs of the state?

happily administered, and the general interests of the community began to assume the most promising appearance.

On the termination of the revolutionary contest, the inhabitants, no longer engaged in the defence of the country, or exposed to the depredations of the enemy, directed their attention to the pursuits of agriculture, and the arts of peace. By their industry and enterprise, they made rapid advances in repairing the losses which had been sustained during that protracted and desolating war. The increase of wealth, the improvements everywhere apparent, the rapid extension of the settlements, and the general aspect of plenty and prosperity, that pervaded the state, sufficiently evinced the success, that attended their exertions.

During the revolution, a considerable portion of the state was in the possession of the enemy, and many of its most fertile tracts constantly exposed to their depredations. Many of the new settlements were entirely broken up. On the return of peace, these were resumed, and many others commenced, which progressed with astonishing rapidity.

In 1785, the district, comprehended between the Oneida reservation, and the Mohawk river above the German Flatts, and subsequently divided into the townships of Whitestown, Paris, and Westmoreland, contained but two families. In 1796, there were six parishes, which contained three full regiments of militia, and one corps of light horse.\*

\* *Holmes's Annals.*

---

To what did the inhabitants direct their attention?—What success attended them?

*What is said of the new settlements and other parts of the state during the war?—What took place on the return of peace?*

Commerce, which in common with other pursuits had been interrupted during the war, experienced a rapid revival on the return of peace.

The **Empress of China**, a ship of 360 tons, the first vessel from the United States to China, sailed from New York in February, 1784, for Canton, and returned the following year.

SEC. v. The controversy relative to the New Hampshire Grants still continued to agitate the eastern part of the state. Frequent applications had been made by both parties to the general congress, for the interference of that body, but without obtaining any decisive result. In 1789, the legislature passed an act for the purpose of settling this controversy, and acknowledging the territory, as an independent state. Commissioners were mutually appointed, and, in 1790, the subject was brought to an amicable adjustment. The new state was, in 1791, recognized by congress, and admitted into the Union, with the name of Vermont.

It was stipulated, that Vermont should pay the sum of thirty thousand dollars to the state of New York ; and that all claim of jurisdiction of the state of New York, and all rights and titles to lands within the state of Vermont, under grants from the colony or state of New York, should cease ; and thenceforth the perpetual boundary line between the state of New York, and the state of Vermont, should be, as then held and possessed, viz.: the west lines of the most western towns, which had been granted by New Hampshire, and the middle channel of Lake Champlain.

---

What was the state of commerce ?

v. What took place in 1789, and the two following years, in relation to the controversy with the Grants ?

*What was stipulated ?*

SEC. VI. The inhabitants of New York now began to direct their attention to the more scientific pursuit of agriculture and the arts. The "Society for the promotion of Agriculture, Arts, and Manufactures" was established in 1791. The "Western Inland Lock Navigation Company" was incorporated the following year.

The business of manufacture had been commenced during the revolution, and considerable progress had been made; but on the return of peace, owing to the excessive importation of foreign articles, it was mostly abandoned. The commerce of the state had been rapidly increasing, and was now in the most prosperous condition.

In 1791, the exports to foreign ports amounted to above two million five hundred thousand dollars. In 1793, six hundred and eightythree foreign vessels, and one thousand three hundred and eightyone coasting vessels entered the port of New York.

SEC. VII. 1795. Mr Clinton, after having for eighteen years discharged the office of governor with talents and fidelity, published an address to the freeholders of the state, stating that his respect for the republican principle of rotation in office, would no longer permit him to fill his recent honorable station. He was succeeded by Mr Jay, who was continued in that office till 1801, when Mr Clinton again accepted a reelection.

---

VI. What Society was established in 1791?—What the following year?—What is said of manufactures?—Of commerce?

VII. By whom was Gov. Clinton succeeded in 1795?—When was he again elected?

This period is distinguished only by the general, and almost unrivalled prosperity, that attended the public and private concerns of community; and its history would be little more than a detail of the successful pursuit of the various avocations of civil life. The passing of laws for regulating the general and local interests of society, the granting of lands, and organizing the new settlements, comprised the usual and ordinary business of the government.

In 1796, the Legislature passed an act, granting an annuity of five thousand five hundred and fiftytwo dollars to the Oneida Indians, in lieu of all former stipulations, for lands purchased in 1795; two thousand three hundred to the Cayugas, and two thousand to the Onondagas. An act was also passed for the relief of Indians, who were entitled to land in Brothertown. A general organization act, dividing the state into thirty counties, was passed in 1801.

SEC. VIII. 1804. Mr Clinton having been elected Vice President of the United States, Morgan Lewis was chosen to succeed him, as Governor of New York. Mr Lewis was succeeded by Daniel D. Tompkins in 1807. Albany was the same year made the capital of the state.

The contest between the two great parties, into which the country was divided, was still continued, and party feeling abated none of its violence. The measures of the general government and the appointment of civil officers,

---

What is said of this period?—What comprised the usual business of government?

*What acts of the legislature are mentioned?*

VIII. Who was elected governor in 1804?—In 1807?—What other event the same year?

*What is said of the parties at this time?—What were the usual subjects of controversy?*

constituted the usual subjects of controversy. In 1800, the republican party in New York obtained the ascendancy. After a warmly contested election, Thomas Jefferson, the republican candidate, was chosen President of the United States in 1801. During his administration, commenced the series of encroachments on the American commerce, by the British, which resulted in a war with that country in 1812. Mr Jefferson retired from the office of President in 1809, and was succeeded by James Madison.

SEC. IX. 1810. An act was passed by the legislature, "for exploring the route of an inland navigation from Hudson's river to Lake Ontario, and Lake Erie;" commissioners were appointed for this purpose, who made report the following year. The subject now began to excite very general interest, and a bill being introduced by Mr Clinton, an act was passed, "to provide for the improvement of the internal navigation of the State." Commissioners were again appointed, and authorized to solicit assistance from the Congress of the United States.

The commissioners appointed De Witt Clinton and Gouverneur Morris to lay the subject before the general government. They proceeded to Washington, exhibited their credentials, and presented a memorial to Congress; but were unsuccessful in their application to that body for assistance. In March, 1812, the commissioners again made report to the

---

*Which obtained the ascendancy?—Who was elected President of the United States in 1801?—What was commenced during his administration?—By whom was he succeeded in 1809?*

ix. What acts were passed in 1810, and the following year?—For what were commissioners appointed?—What success attended the application?—What report was made in 1812?

legislature, and insisted that *now*, sound policy imperatively demanded, that the canal should be made by the state, and for her own account, as soon as circumstances would permit. The subject was, however, soon after suspended\* by the breaking out of the war with Great Britain.

The Western Inland Navigation Company, incorporated in 1792, had confined their views to the improvement of the navigation of the Mohawk river, the Oneida lake, and Seneca river as far as the Seneca lake. In 1795, the country was explored, under the direction of the company, as far west as the Seneca lake; and a report made, stating the practicability of considerable improvement in the navigation, by connecting those waters. The funds of the company, however, limited their operations to the improvements on the Mohawk river and Wood creek.

The subject remained in this posture until 1808, when Joshua Forman, Esq. a member of the legislature from Onondaga, made a motion in the assembly for a survey to be made under the surveyor general of the county, between Lake Erie and Hudson river, in order to ascertain the practicability of connecting the several waters. The resolution was adopted; but the survey was not made, and nothing further resulted from the motion.

In 1810, as before stated, the attention of the legislature was again called to the subject, and the resolution for causing the survey to be made, passed unanimously. The whole route was explored during the summer, and several surveys made the following year, the result of which was highly favorable to the prosecution of the enterprise. In the reports of the commissioners, the practicability of a canal navigation from the Hudson to Lake Erie, and the

\* *An act to this effect was passed on the report of the commissioners in 1814.*

---

Why was the subject suspended?

*To what were the operations of the Inland Navigation Company limited? — What took place in 1808? — When was the route explored? — What was the result of these surveys?*

immense advantages which would result from the accomplishment of this object, were fully demonstrated. The public attention was aroused, and the importance of the work began to be in some measure appreciated.

In their report of 1812, the commissioners estimate the expense of the undertaking at six millions of dollars; and affirm, as the result of their calculations, that should the canal cost even ten millions, the revenue which would accrue from it, would soon discharge the interest, and very soon afterwards, by natural and necessary increase, discharge the principal.

After advertizing to the future importance of this work, they prophetically observe—"Even when, by the flow of that perpetual stream which bears all human institutions away, our constitution shall be dissolved, and our laws be lost, still the descendants of our children's children will remain.—The same mountains will stand, the same rivers run.—New moral combinations will be founded on the old physical foundations, and the extended line of remote posterity, after a lapse of two thousand years, and the ravage of repeated revolutions, when the records of history shall have been obliterated, and the tongue of tradition have converted (as in China) the shadowy remembrance of ancient events into childish tales of miracle, this national work shall remain. It shall bear testimony to the genius, the learning, the industry, and the intelligence of the present age."

Soon after this report was presented, an act was passed by the legislature, authorizing the commissioners, upon such terms and conditions as they should deem reasonable, to purchase, in behalf of the state, all the rights, interest, and estate of the "Western Inland Navigation Company," and to take charge of the same. An act was also passed, authorizing the commissioners to borrow five millions of dollars in behalf of the state, for the prosecution of the canal. This act was, however, repealed in 1814.

---

*What estimate was made in the report of 1812?—What acts were soon after passed?—Which was repealed in 1814?*

## CHAP. XV.

## WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN.

*War declared. Preparation for the Invasion of Canada. Battle of Queenstown. Capture of York and Fort George. Operations on the Lakes. Battles of Bridgewater, Chippewa and Plattsburg. Termination of the war. Commencement and Completion of the Northern and Erie Canals.*

SEC. I. 1812. The encroachment of the British upon the maritime rights of the Americans, had for some time been a subject of controversy between the two countries. After repeated negotiations, in which no satisfactory concessions had been made by the British government, the depredations on the American commerce were still continued. At this crisis, the committee on foreign relations made report in concurrence with the message of the President, recommending, as the last resort for the defence of their rights, an appeal to arms. A bill for the declaration of war with Great Britain, was accordingly introduced,\* and after

\*The bill was passed by the House of Representatives on the 4th, and by the Senate, on the 17th.

1. What had for some time been a subject of controversy with Great Britain?—What was the result of the negotiation on this subject?—What was recommended by the board on foreign relations?

having passed both Houses of Congress, received the signature of the President on the 18th of June. Preparations were immediately made for the commencement of hostilities.

“The grounds of the war, as set forth in the President’s message to Congress, were—The impressment of American seamen, by the British; the blockade of her enemies’ ports, supported by no adequate forces, in consequence of which, the American commerce had been plundered in every sea, and the great staples of the country cut off from their legitimate markets; and the British orders in council.”

“The right of search” constituted an important point of controversy. Great Britain claimed, among her prerogatives, to take her native born subjects for her navy, wherever found, and of searching American vessels for this purpose. Native born British subjects, who had voluntarily enlisted on board our vessels, were frequently seized by the officers of the British navy, and, under color of seizing their own subjects, thousands of American seamen were impressed into the British service.

Great Britain and France were at this time at war with each other, and had involved most of the European powers in their controversies. In 1806, the British government issued an order in council, declaring the ports and rivers, from the Elbe to Brest to be in a state of blockade. By this order, all American vessels trading to these and intervening ports were liable to seizure and condemnation. The French soon after issued the “*Berlin Decree*,” by which all the British Islands were declared to be in a state of blockade, and all intercourse with them prohibited. In January, 1807, the British government issued an order in council, prohibiting all coasting trade with France; and, in November, the celebrated *British orders in council*,

---

When was war declared.

What were the grounds of the war, as set forth in the president’s message?—What constituted an important point of controversy? What is said of impressments?—Of the state of Great Britain and France at this time?

prohibiting all commercial intercourse with France and her allies, all nations at war with Great Britain, and all places from which the British flag was excluded. This was retaliated on the part of France in December by the "*Milan Decree*," declaring every vessel denationalized, which shall have submitted to a search by a British ship, and every vessel a good prize which should sail to or from Great Britain, or any of its colonies, or countries, occupied by British troops.'

While America was endeavoring to maintain a neutrality and continue her commerce with the belligerents, they continued to array against each other these violent commercial edicts, in direct violation of the law of nations, and the most solemn treaties. In consequence of these edicts, the British and French cruisers were let loose upon the American commerce, by whom a large number of our merchantmen were captured, and an immense amount of American property seized and condemned.

In December Congress passed an act, laying an *embargo* on all vessels within the jurisdiction of the United States. This measure failing to coerce the belligerents into an acknowledgment of our rights, an act was passed, March following, by which all trade and intercourse with France and England was prohibited. This was retaliated on the part of France, the following year, by the "*Rambouillet decree*," ordering all American vessels and cargoes, arriving in any of the ports of France, or countries occupied by French troops, to be seized and condemned.

Congress, May following, passed an act, excluding British and French armed vessels from the waters of the United States; but providing, that in case either of these nations should modify its edicts, before the 3d of March, 1811, so that they should cease to violate neutral commerce, commercial intercourse with such nation might be

---

*What measures were taken by congress to coerce the belligerents into an acknowledgment of our rights?—How was this retaliated by France?—What act of congress in May?—Give some account of the orders in council, and French decrees.—What influence had these on the commercial interests of the Americans?*

renewed. In consequence of this act, official intelligence was soon after received by the American government, that the French decrees were revoked.

No concessions were, however, made on the part of Great Britain, and her orders in council were still rigidly enforced. While affairs were in this posture, an encounter took place, May 1814, between the American frigate, President, commanded by Capt. Rogers, and the British sloop of war, Little Belt, commanded by Capt. Bingham, in which the latter suffered severely in her men and rigging. The attack was commenced by the Little Belt without previous provocation, or justifiable cause.—War now appeared to be the only alternative; and Congress, having been assembled by proclamation in November, proceeded, in accordance with the recommendation of the president, to pass bills preparatory to a state of hostilities.

The opinions of Congress, and of the people of the United States, were much at variance on the policy and expediency of the war. By the friends of the existing administration, constituting the *republican* party, the measure was warmly supported, and the war declared to be unavoidable and just. By the *federal* party it was as warmly opposed, and declared to be impolitic, unnecessary, and unjust. The federal party, at this time constituting the minority in Congress, entered their solemn protest against it.

The commencement of the war was unfortunately signalized by the surrender of Detroit, with about two thousand five hundred men to the enemy. Gen. Hull, the commander, was charged with treason, cowardice, and unofficerlike conduct, and tried before a court martial. On the first charge the court declined giving an opinion; on the two last, he was sentenced to death. The sentence was, however, remitted by the president.

---

*What intelligence was soon after received?—What was the state of the controversy in relation to Great Britain at this time?—What naval occurrence is mentioned?—What were the sentiments of the people of the United States as to the policy and expediency of the war?—What is said of the commencement of the war?*

SEC. II. The attention of the Americans was early directed to the invasion of Canada, and troops to the number of eight or ten thousand were collected along the line for this purpose. They were distributed into three divisions—The *North Western* army under Gen. Harrison; the army of the *Centre* under Gen. Stephen Van Rensselaer at Lewistown; and the army of the *North* in the vicinity of Plattsburg, under Gen. Dearborn, the commander in chief. Great exertions were also made for preparing a naval force upon the lakes, the command of which was entrusted to Com. Chauncey.

After the surrender of Detroit, the Americans had but one vessel of war on these waters, the *Oneida*, of sixteen guns on lake Ontario, commanded by Lieut. Woolsey. Com. Chauncey, with a body of seamen, arrived at Sackett's Harbor about the first of October, and several schooners, which had been employed as traders on the lake, were immediately purchased and fitted out as vessels of war. Lieut. Elliot was despatched to Black Rock to make arrangements there for building a naval force superior to that of the enemy on lake Erie. Soon after his arrival, an opportunity was offered for a display of the most determined heroism.

On the 8th of October, two British vessels, the *Detroit*, late the United States brig *Adams*, and the brig *Caledonia*, came down the lake from Malden, and anchored under the guns of fort Erie, situated nearly opposite Black Rock. Elliot immediately determined to make an attack, and if possible get possession of them, and ac-

---

II. To what was the attention of the Americans early directed?—What disposition was made of the troops?—What exertions were made on the lakes?

*What was the state of the American naval force on the lakes?—What measures were taken?*

cordingly despatched an express to hasten the arrival of some sailors who were hourly expected. They arrived about noon, fifty in number, and were allowed only till midnight to refresh themselves, when, being reinforced by fifty of the regular land forces, they put off from the mouth of Buffalo creek in two boats with Lieut. Elliot at their head.

Having rowed into the lake above the vessels, they drifted down with the current, till they were hailed by a sentinel on board one of them, when they instantly sprang to their oars, and closing in upon the vessels; they jumped on board, drove the British below, and in ten minutes from their getting alongside, the prisoners were all secured, and the vessels under way.

Unfortunately the wind was not sufficiently strong to carry them up against the current into the lake, and both ran aground. The Caledonia, however, was beached under the protection of one of the batteries at Black Rock, but the Detroit lay near the head of the island in the middle of the river exposed to the batteries and flying artillery of the enemy. The Americans returned their fire from the Detroit; but finding they could not bring their guns to bear with advantage, the prisoners were all got on shore and the brig deserted. During the day several unsuccessful attempts were made by the British, to board and destroy the military stores in the Detroit, but they were mostly secured by the Americans, after which she was set on fire and abandoned. The loss of the Americans in this enterprise was only two killed, and four wounded.\*

SEC. III. On the 13th of October, a detachment from the army of the centre, consisting of about one thousand men, crossed the Niagara river, and attacked the British on the heights of Queenstown. They succeeded in dislodging the enemy; but not being reinforced

\* Historical Register.

*Give some account of the enterprise at Fort Erie.*  
III. What can you say of the attack on Queenstown?

from the American side, as was expected, were afterwards repulsed and compelled to surrender.

The troops destined for this expedition, having been assembled at Lewistown the preceding evening, began to embark at the dawn of day under cover of a battery mounting two eighteen pounders and two sixes. To accomplish their landing, they had only twelve boats, each capable of containing twenty men. Their movements were soon discovered by the enemy, and a brisk fire of musketry was poured from the whole line of the Canada shore aided by three batteries. Col. Van Rensselaer effected the first landing in the face of this tremendous fire with only one hundred men. Though severely wounded the moment he leaped from the boat, he formed his men in a masterly manner, and commanded his officers to move on. They soon succeeded in gaining the heights, and, reinforcements arriving, the forts were stormed and the enemy driven down the hill in every direction.

Both parties were now reinforced, the Americans by regulars and militia, the British by six hundred regulars under Gen. Brock. The contest was renewed, and after a desperate engagement the enemy were repulsed. Gen. Brock and his aid, Capt. M'Donald, fell about the same instant. Gen. Van Rensselaer now crossed over, for the purpose of fortifying the heights preparatory to another attack.

At three o'clock in the afternoon, the enemy, being reinforced by several hundred Indians, again advanced, and were a third time repulsed. Gen. Van Rensselaer now recrossed the river, and made an attempt to obtain the assistance of the militia, who were collecting on the opposite side, but was unsuccessful. The militia, dismayed by the view of the contest from the opposite side, absolutely refused to embark. The British in the meantime were reinforced by eight hundred soldiers from Fort George, and renewed the attack. Finding it impractical

---

*Give a more particular account of the operations.*

ble to obtain the necessary reinforcements, the general ordered a retreat; but unfortunately the boats were dispersed, and many of the boatmen had fled. The Americans for a time continued to struggle against the superior force of the enemy, but were finally compelled to surrender themselves prisoners of war. The loss of the Americans in killed was about sixty; in wounded and taken prisoners, about seven hundred:—that of the enemy is unknown, but must have been severe.

Gen. Van Rensselaer soon after resigned the command, which devolved on Gen. Smyth, who, the last of November, projected another expedition, which was to have sailed from Buffalo. This expedition, however, failed from the same cause, which occasioned the misfortune at Queenstown, the refusal of the militia to cross the lines.

The operations of the war the present year were distinguished by several splendid naval achievements. About the middle of August, the British frigate Guerriere, commanded by Capt. Dacres, was captured by the United States frigate Constitution, commanded by Capt. Isaac Hull. On the 17th of October, the enemy's brig Frolic was captured by the American sloop of war, Wasp. Both of these vessels were, however, taken the same day by the Poictiers, a British seventyfour. On the 25th, the frigate United States, of fortyfour guns, commanded by Commodore Decatur, captured the Macedonian, a frigate of fortynine guns. On the 29th of December, the Constitution, then commanded by Com. Bainbridge, captured the British frigate Java, commanded by Capt. Lambert. During the winter of 1813, an engagement took place, off South America, between the Hornet, commanded by Capt. Lawrence, and the British sloop of war, Peacock. After an action of but fifteen minutes, the Peacock was compelled to surrender.

SEC. IV. 1813. In January, the Americans under Gen. Winchester sustained a severe defeat from the British, under Gen. Proctor, at

---

*What enterprise was soon after projected?—What occasioned its failure?—What can you say of the naval operations the present year?*

IV. What occurred in January, 1813?

the river Raisin. During the winter, the operations of the war on the New York frontier were mostly suspended. Some skirmishing took place along the St Lawrence; but the opposing enemies being divided by a barrier of ice, not sufficiently strong to admit of the transportation of artillery, no enterprise of any importance was attempted.

In February, intelligence was received at Ogdensburg, that several men who had deserted from the opposite shore on the ice, had been taken on the American side by a party of the British, and carried off and confined in the jail at Brockville. Capt. Forsythe, the commander at Ogdensburg, crossed over with about two hundred militia and riflemen for the purpose of retaking the prisoners, and capturing the military stores at Brockville. On their arrival, they were fired upon by the sentinels, but instead of returning it, they rushed through the main street to the jail, which was instantly carried and the prisoners liberated. After capturing about fifty prisoners, and a small quantity of military stores, they returned without loss.

The following evening, a small party of Indians crossed over and made an attack upon the guard belonging to Forsythe's company, but were repulsed. On the 22d, the enemy crossed over in considerable force and succeeded in capturing Ogdensburg. Forsythe effected a safe retreat before a superior force to Black Lake. Some alarm was excited for the safety of Sackett's Harbor, but immediate measures were taken for its defence. No attempts were, however, made at further conquest, and the British shortly after retired across the St Lawrence.

SEC. V. In April, Gen. Dearborn made dispositions for a descent upon York, the capital of Upper Canada. A successful attack was made on the 27th, and the place, with

---

What is said of the operations of the war during the winter?

v. What enterprise was undertaken by the Americans in April, and what success attended it?

large quantities of military stores, fell into the hands of the Americans.

The enterprise was committed to a detachment of one thousand seven hundred troops, under Gen. Pike. The fleet, under Commodore Chauncey, with the troops from Sackett's Harbor, moved down the lake, and, on the 27th, arrived one and a half miles from the enemy's works. The British, consisting of about seven hundred and fifty regulars, and five hundred Indians, under Gen. Sheaffe, attempted to oppose the landing, but were thrown into confusion, and fled to their garrison.

The Americans advanced, but, on their approach to the barracks, an explosion of a magazine, previously prepared for that purpose, took place, which killed about one hundred men, among whom was the gallant Pike. He lived, however, to direct his troops, thrown into a momentary confusion, "to move on." They advanced under Col. Pearce towards the town, and took possession of the barracks, when they were met by the officers of the Canada militia, with offers of capitulation. At four o'clock, the troops entered the town.

The British lost in killed, wounded and prisoners, seven hundred and fifty men; the Americans, in killed and wounded, about three hundred. Early in May, the place was evacuated, and the fleet moved to Four Mile Creek, below Fort Niagara, where the troops were landed, and a detachment of one hundred men with two schooners sent to the head of the lake to seize a quantity of public stores. The stores were guarded by about eighty regulars, who were soon put to flight. The stores were brought away, the public buildings burnt, and the expedition returned without loss to Fort Niagara. Com. Chauncey soon after sailed for Sackett's Harbor, to obtain reinforcements.

SEC. vi. Commodore Chauncey having returned with the fleet to Fort Niagara, it was

---

*To whom was the enterprise committed? — By whom were they opposed? — What occurred on the approach of the Americans? What was the loss of the parties? — What expedition was soon after undertaken?*

immediately resolved to make a descent upon Fort George, situated on the opposite shore. An attack was made, on the 27th of May, and after a short contest, the place fell into the hands of the Americans.

The troops having been embarked, the fleet stood out early in the morning, and took a favorable position for annoying the enemy's batteries, and to cover the landing of the troops. In ten minutes after the schooners opened upon the batteries, they were completely silenced and abandoned. The troops then landed near a fort which had been silenced at Two Mile Creek. Immediately on their landing, the enemy, who had been concealed in a ravine, advanced in great force to the edge of the bank, in order to charge them ; but the schooners opened so heavy and well directed a fire, that they were compelled to retreat. The troops in the mean time formed, and ascending the bank immediately charged the enemy, who were routed and put to flight in every direction. The British now reentered Fort George, and having set fire to their magazines, moved off rapidly towards Queenstown. They were pursued by the light troops for several miles, when becoming exhausted through fatigue, they returned to Fort George.

The loss of the Americans in this enterprise 39 killed, and 111 wounded ; that of the enemy 108 killed, and 278 taken prisoners, of whom 163 were wounded. The number of militia paroled by Gen. Dearborn was 507. The British garrison at Fort Erie soon after blew up their magazine and retreated.

On the 23d of June, Gen. Dearborn despatched Lieut. Col. Boerstler, with 570 men, to Beaver Dam, to disperse a body of the enemy. When within about two miles of that place, he was attacked from an ambuscade but soon drove the enemy some distance into the woods. He then retired into a clear field, and sent an express for a reinforcement. Three hundred men were immediately

---

vi. What place was next attacked ?—What success attended the attack ?

*Give some account of the occurrence at Beaver Dam ?*

marched to his relief, but before their arrival Boerstler had surrendered.

SEC. VII. During these operations of the Americans, several enterprises were undertaken by the enemy. About the last of May a detachment of one thousand of the British under Sir George Prevost made an attack upon Sackett's Harbor, but were repulsed with considerable loss.

The American loss in this attack was 21 killed, 84 wounded, and 26 missing, of the regulars and volunteers; of the militia, 25 were killed, wounded and missing. The enemy had 29 killed, 22 wounded, 35 taken prisoners; in addition, many were killed in the boats while effecting their landing, and a number carried off the field previous to the commencement of their retreat.

On the 19th of June, the British landed and burnt Sodus, where a quantity of provisions was deposited; and on the following day made an unsuccessful attempt to land at Oswego. On the 2d of July another unsuccessful attempt was made at Sackett's Harbor. On the 11th, a party of the enemy crossed over at Black Rock, and succeeded in carrying off a quantity of stores. Several enterprises were likewise conducted by the enemy on Lake Erie.

During the spring of the present year, New York was blockaded by the enemy. At the south, Chesapeake Bay was blockaded, and some predatory excursions made on the coast. On the first of June, an action took place between the British frigate Shannon and the Chesapeake commanded by Capt. Lawrence, in which the latter was compelled to surrender, her commander being mortally wounded. In August, the Argus, an American vessel, was captured by the Pelican. In September, success again returned to the Americans, and the British brig Boxer was captured by the Enterprise after a short, but obstinate engagement.

\* Historical Register.

---

*What is said of the attack on Sackett's Harbor? — What other enterprises of the enemy? — What operations on the sea board?*

SEC. VIII. On the 10th of September, an engagement took place between the American fleet under Commodore Perry, and that of the British on Lake Erie. After a long and desperate conflict, the Americans obtained a decided victory.

The American squadron consisted of nine vessels, carrying fiftyfour guns, that of the British, of six vessels, and sixtythree guns. The line of battle was formed at eleven, and a quarter before twelve, the enemy's flag ship, Queen Charlotte, opened a tremendous fire upon the Lawrence, flag ship of Com. Perry, which was sustained by the latter, ten minutes before she could bring her carronades to bear. At length she bore up and engaged the enemy, but the wind was too light to permit the other vessels to support her, and she was compelled to contend for two hours with two ships of equal force. By this time, the brig became unmanageable, and most of the crew being either killed or wounded, Perry abandoned her, and passed unhurt to the Niagara.

The wind now rose, and spreading every canvass, he bore down upon the enemy. The remainder of the American squadron, one after another, arrived, closed in with the enemy, and the action became general. Three hours finished the contest, and Perry announced the capture of the whole squadron to Gen. Harrison, in this laconic style.—“ We have met the enemy, and they are ours.” The Americans had twentyseven killed, and ninetysix wounded ; the British lost in killed, wounded, and taken prisoners, about eight hundred.

SEC. IX. The operations on Lake Ontario were less decisive. During the latter part of summer and autumn, frequent skirmishes took place, but no important advantage was obtained by either party.

---

viii. What operations on Lake Erie in September ?

*Give some account of the engagement ?*

ix. What is said of the operations on Lake Ontario ?

The British had a powerful naval force on Lake Ontario, at this time commanded by Com. Yeo, and had thus far held the entire control of the lake. After great exertions, Com. Chauncey had succeeded in preparing a fleet nearly equal to that of the enemy, and sailed from Sackett's Harbor about the middle of July. His movements were however much embarrassed by the heavy sailing of his vessels. He made several attempts to bring the enemy to an engagement, but by their superior sailing, they escaped from his pursuit.

The two squadrons had a running fight on the 11th of September, in which, the enemy sustained considerable damage, both in men and vessels. After being for some days blockaded at Duck Island, they escaped to Kingston, and Com. Chauncey returned to Sackett's Harbor. On the 5th of October, Chauncey discovered seven sail of the enemy, near the False Ducks, and immediately gave chase. The enemy soon after set fire to, and abandoned, one of their vessels; and five others were compelled to surrender with about three hundred prisoners of war. The captured vessels proved to be transports from York, with troops, bound to Kingston.

SEC. X. Soon after the capture of the enemy's fleet on Lake Erie, Detroit fell into the hands of the Americans, and great preparations were made for the conquest of Montreal. This object was to be accomplished by two divisions under Generals Wilkinson and Hampton, who were to effect a junction on the St Lawrence. The division under Wilkinson moved down the river early in November. On the 11th a severe but indecisive engagement took place between a detachment of the Americans under Gen. Boyd, and a detachment of the enemy under Lieut. Col. Morrison at Williamsburg. The loss of the Americans,

---

x. What occurred soon after the capture of the fleet on Lake Erie?

in killed and wounded, was above three hundred ; that of the enemy was unknown.

The force of the Americans in this action consisted of indefinite detachments from the boats, and consequently it is impossible to give an accurate statement of the number on the field. They were estimated at from 1600 to 1700 men. The force of the enemy was estimated at from 1200 to 2000, exclusive of militia. Both parties claimed the victory in this battle ; the British because they captured a piece of cannon, and because the Americans retired from the battle ground ; the Americans, because they fully accomplished their object, in beating back the enemy, who was harassing them in their progress down the river. The British account states, that they took one hundred prisoners, of which no mention is made by the Americans.\*

SEC. xi. Gen. Hampton made a short incursion into Canada ; but, owing to some misunderstanding between the two commanders, no junction was effected. The enterprise against Montreal was soon after abandoned, and the troops retired to winter quarters at French Mills, in the vicinity of St Regis. Fort George was evacuated by the Americans about the middle of December. The fortress was blown up, and the town of Newark, situated a mile below, and containing about 200 houses, was laid in ashes.

SEC. xii. On the 19th of December, the British crossed over above Fort Niagara, and succeeded in taking the place by storm. The

\* Historical Register.

---

*Give some account of the action at Williamsburg.*

xii. What was the result of the enterprise against Montreal ?—What further operations are mentioned ?

xiii. What depredations of the enemy in December ?

attack was made about 4 o'clock in the morning, and the garrison were completely surprised. Such as escaped the fury of the first onset, made some ineffectual resistance, but were soon compelled to surrender.

After the capture of the fort, the British proceeded up the river, and, having driven off a detachment of militia stationed at Lewistown Heights, burned that village and those of Youngstown, Manchester, and the Indian Tuscarora. On the 30th, another detachment of the British crossed over near Black Rock. They were opposed by the militia under Gen. Hall; but, overpowered by the numbers and discipline of the enemy, the militia soon gave way; and were totally routed. Having set fire to Black Rock, the enemy advanced to Buffalo, and, by the burning of that place, completed the desolation of the Niagara frontier.

SEC. XIII. 1814. Fort Erie was taken by the Americans, early in July, and, during the same month, sanguinary battles were fought at Chippewa, and Bridgewater. On the 14th of August, the British made an attempt to regain possession of Fort Erie. After a severe engagement, they were repulsed with the loss of six hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners. The loss of the Americans was about two hundred and forty.

In the battle of Bridgewater, or Niagara, the Americans were commanded by Generals Brown and Scott;

---

XIII. What can you say of the operations in 1814?  
*Of the battle of Bridgewater?*

the British by Generals Drummond and Riall. The battle commenced at four o'clock, P. M. and continued till midnight. The British were compelled to retire with the loss of nine hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners. The loss of the Americans did not exceed one hundred.

SEC. XIV. Sir George Prevost, with an army of fourteen thousand men, made a descent upon Plattsburg, where he arrived on the 11th of September, and, after a severe engagement, was compelled to retire with great loss. The British fleet on Lake Champlain, commanded by Com. Downie, was the same day captured, by that of the Americans under Com. Macdonough.

Both the Americans and the British had at this time a respectable force on Lake Champlain. That of the latter was superior, amounting to ninetyfive guns, and one thousand and fifty men, while the American squadron carried but eightysix guns, and eight hundred and twenty-six men.

The American fleet was lying off Plattsburg, when the British squadron was observed bearing down in order of battle. An engagement ensued, which lasted two hours and twenty minutes. By this time the enemy was silenced, and one frigate, one brig, and two sloops of war fell into the hands of the Americans. Several British galleys were sunk, and a few others escaped. The loss of the Americans was fiftytwo killed, and fiftyeight wounded; of the British, eightyfour killed, and one hundred and ten wounded.

On the commencement of the naval action, Sir George Prevost led up his forces against the American works, and began throwing upon them shells, balls, and rockets. The Americans, at the same time, opened a severe and destructive fire from their forts. Before sunset, the temporary batteries of the enemy were all silenced, and every attempt to cross from Plattsburg to the American works, repelled.

---

xiv. What enterprise of the enemy in September?—What was the result of the engagement at Plattsburg?

*Give some further account of these operations.*

At nine o'clock, the object was abandoned, and the British general hastily drew off his forces, diminished by killed, wounded, and deserted, two thousand five hundred. Large quantities of military stores were abandoned, and fell into the hands of the Americans.

In March of the present year, the American navy suffered no inconsiderable loss in the Essex, commanded by Com. Porter, which was captured by a superior British force in the bay of Valparaiso, South America. In April, the British brig Epervier, after an action of fortytwo minutes, was surrendered to the American sloop of war Peacock.

Some important enterprises were undertaken by the enemy at the south the present year. In August, above fifty sail of the British arrived in the Chesapeake. On the 23d, a large detachment forced their way to Washington, and burned the capitol, president's house, and executive offices. They then hastily retired, and regained their shipping. Early in September, an enterprise was conducted against Baltimore. After an unsuccessful engagement on the 12th, the British were repulsed with the loss of Gen. Ross, their commander in chief.

In December, the enemy's fleet, consisting of sixty sail, appeared off the coast of the Mississippi. A detachment of fifteen thousand were landed, under command of Sir Edward Packenham ; and, on the 8th of January, attacked the Americans, consisting of about six thousand, chiefly militia, under Gen. Jackson, in their entrenchments before New Orleans. After an obstinate engagement, the enemy were compelled to retire, with the loss of their commander, and near three thousand men in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

SEC. xiv. The war was soon after terminated by the treaty of Ghent. This treaty was signed by the commissioners of the two countries on the 24th of December, 1814, and ratified by

---

*What naval occurrences are mentioned the present year? —*  
*What operations of the enemy at the south?*

xvi. When, and in what manner was the war terminated?

the president and senate, on the 17th of February following.

This treaty made provision "for the suspension of hostilities—the exchange of prisoners—the restoration of territories and possessions obtained by the contending powers during the war—and a combined effort for the abolition of the slave trade." No provision was made in regard to the subjects for which the war was avowedly undertaken. It was, however, contended by the friends of the administration, that as the orders in council had been repealed, and the motives for impressment ceased with the wars in Europe, the grounds of the controversy now no longer existed.

SEC. xv. The termination of hostilities presented an opportunity for resuming the great plans of improvement in the internal navigation of the state. In 1816, an act was passed, directing the commissioners "to devise and adopt such measures as might be requisite to facilitate and effect a communication, by means of canals and locks, between the *navigable waters of Hudson's river* and Lake Erie, and the said *navigable waters* and Lake Champlain." Nothing of importance was however effected the present year.

During the session of 1817, a memorial was presented, signed by above one hundred thousand of the citizens, calling upon the legislature to pass laws for the commencement and execution of the proposed canals. An act was accordingly passed, and large appropriations made for this purpose. The Erie and Champlain canals were immediately commenced,

---

*What can you say of this treaty?*

xv. For what did the termination of hostilities present an opportunity?—What act was passed in 1816?—What was effected the present year?—What took place in 1817?

and vigorous measures taken for their prosecution.

On the revival of this subject, at the close of the war, the state of the public mind was found to be highly unfavorable to the enterprise. The excitement, which had been produced by the reports of the commissioners in 1811 and 1812, had mostly subsided, and great doubts were entertained, by a large body of the citizens, of the practicability of the proposed undertaking. Many, intimidated by the magnitude of the work, apprehended that the resources of the state were entirely inadequate to secure its completion. In addition to these difficulties, the measure was warmly opposed on party grounds.

In 1816, the commissioners again made report to the legislature, and stated, that their former opinions had been confirmed by reflection and additional inquiry. Their report was clear and conclusive, but failed in producing any very important results. Some measures were taken for the fartherance of the work, but its importance, and the advantages which must result from it were, at this time, very imperfectly appreciated. The commissioners, appointed the present year, were Stephen Van Rensselaer, De Witt Clinton, Samuel Young, Joseph Ellicott, and Myron Holley.

In autumn, several distinguished individuals,\* aware of the gloomy and discouraged state of the public mind, proceeded to call a meeting of the citizens, at the City Hotel, in New York, to take into consideration the propriety of an application to the legislature, in favor of prosecuting the canals. The meeting was large, and highly respectable. William Bayard was placed in the chair, when the business was opened by Judge Platt, followed by De Witt Clinton, John Swartwout, and others. Messrs Clinton, Swartwout, and Eddy, were constituted a committee to prepare a memorial to the legislature.

\* Judge Platt, De Witt Clinton, and Thomas Eddy. [182]

*What was the state of the public mind on this subject at the close of the war?—On what grounds was the work opposed?—What is said of the report of 1816?—Who were appointed commissioners in 1816?—What took place in autumn?*

This memorial was drafted by Mr Clinton, and drawn in a masterly style, embracing a lucid and comprehensive view of the immense advantages that would be produced to the state by the completion of the canal. Copies, which were sent throughout the state, were eagerly signed by thousands, and carried full conviction to every mind. The project immediately became popular, the legislature was roused, and the several successive acts passed for the prosecution of the work. A system of finance was drawn up by Mr Clinton, which, with some trifling alterations, was adopted, and went into successful operation.\*

SEC. XVI. In 1817, Gov. Tompkins was chosen vice president of the United States, and De Witt Clinton was elected to succeed him, as governor of New York. In 1822, Mr Clinton declined a reelection, and was succeeded by Joseph C. Yates. The constitution of the state, having been revised by the convention at Albany, the preceding year, was accepted by the people in January. (See General Views.) In 1824, Mr Clinton was again reelected to the office of governor.

The great system of internal improvement, commenced in 1817, was vigorously prosecuted, and attended by a success equalled only by the spirit and enterprise with which it was conducted. The Champlain canal, seventyone miles in length, was completed in 1823. The Erie canal, three hundred and sixtytwo miles in length, was completed, and in successful

\* See Documents relating to the Canals.

---

*What is said of the memorial?—What effect did it produce?*

xvi. Who was elected governor in 1817?—In 1822?—What other event the same year?—When was Mr Clinton reelected?—What is said of the internal improvements?—When were the canals completed?

operation, in October, 1825. The consummation of this most magnificent and glorious enterprise of the age, was celebrated by a *great state jubilee*, and the peal of cannon was heard from the shores of Lake Erie to those of the Atlantic.\*

\* *Tribute.*

## GENERAL VIEWS.

---



*Constitution and Laws. Political Divisions. Cities and Villages. Agriculture, Manufactures, Commerce, Canals. Banks. Militia. Education. Literary Institutions. Religion. Population. Character.*

SEC. I. *Constitution and Laws.* On the abolition of the regal authority, the convention of the state, in 1777, established a Republican Constitution. It was revised, in 1821, by a convention at Albany, and underwent many important improvements. The new Constitution was presented to the people the following year, and accepted by a majority of more than thirtythree thousand votes. The Constitution secures to the citizens the right of suffrage, freedom of conscience in matters of religion, the privilege of habeas corpus, and trial by jury in all criminal cases, protection of private property, and freedom of the press.

The acts of the legislature of this state, with such parts of the common and statute laws of England and Great Britain, and such acts of the colonial assembly, as are not repugnant to the Constitution, and the acts of the State Legislature, constitute the *Laws* of the State of New York.

---

SEC. I. What Constitution was adopted in 1777?—When was it revised?—What rights are secured to the citizens by the constitution?—What constitute the laws of New York?

The following is a copy of the Constitution, as formed by the Convention of 1821, and accepted by the people in January, 1822.

*We the People of the State of New York, acknowledging with gratitude the grace and beneficence of God, in permitting us to make choice of our form of government, do establish the following Constitution :*

ARTICLE I.—*Legislature.*

SECTION I. The legislative power of this state shall be vested in a senate and assembly.

SEC. II. The senate shall consist of thirtytwo members. The senators shall be chosen for four years, and shall be freeholders. The assembly shall consist of one hundred and twentyeight members, who shall be annually elected.

SEC. III. A majority of each house shall constitute a quorum to do business. Each house shall determine the rules of its own proceedings, and be the judge of the qualifications of its own members. Each house shall choose its own officers ; and the senate shall choose a temporary president, when the lieutenant governor shall not attend as president, or shall act as governor.

SEC. IV. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and publish the same, except such parts as may require secrecy. The doors of each house shall be kept open, except when the public welfare shall require secrecy. Neither house shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than two days.

SEC. V. The state shall be divided into eight districts, to be called senate districts, each of which shall choose four senators.

The first district shall consist of the counties of Suffolk, Queen's, King's, Richmond, and New York.

The second district shall consist of the counties of Westchester, Putnam, Dutchess, Rockland, Orange, Ulster, and Sullivan.

The third district shall consist of the counties of Greene,

---

ART. I. *In what is the legislative power of the state vested ?—Of what must the senate consist ?—The assembly ?—What constitutes a quorum to transact business ?—Give some account of the rules of the house ?—How is the state divided for the election of senators ?*

Columbia, Albany, Rensselaer, Schoharie, and Schenectady.

The fourth district, shall consist of the counties of Saratoga, Montgomery, Hamilton, Washington, Warren, Clinton, Essex, Franklin, and St Lawrence.

The fifth district, shall consist of the counties of Herkimer, Oneida, Madison, Oswego, Lewis, and Jefferson.

The sixth district, shall consist of the counties of Delaware, Otsego, Chenango, Broome, Cortland, Tompkins, and Tioga.

The seventh district shall consist of the counties of Onondaga, Cayuga, Seneca, and Ontario.

The eighth district shall consist of the counties of Steuben, Livingston, Monroe, Genesee, Niagara, Erie, Alleghany, Cattaraugus, and Chittauque.

And as soon as the senate shall meet, after the first election to be held in pursuance of this constitution, they shall cause the senators to be divided by lot into four classes of eight in each, so that every district shall have one senator of each class; the classes to be numbered one, two, three, and four. And the seats of the first class, shall be vacated at the end of the first year; of the second class, at the end of the second year; of the third class, at the end of the third year; of the fourth class, at the end of the fourth year, in order that one senator be annually elected in each senate district.

SEC. VI. An enumeration of the inhabitants of the state shall be taken, under the direction of the legislature, in the year one thousand eight hundred and twentyfive, and at the end of every ten years thereafter; and the said districts shall be so altered by the legislature, at the first session after the return of every enumeration, that each senate district shall contain, as nearly as may be, an equal number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, paupers, and persons of color not taxed; and shall remain unaltered until the return of another enumeration; and shall at all times consist of contiguous territory, and no county shall be divided in the formation of a senate district.

SEC. VII. The members of the assembly shall be chosen

by counties, and shall be apportioned among the several counties of the state, as nearly as may be, according to the numbers of their respective inhabitants, excluding aliens, paupers, and persons of color not taxed. An apportionment of members of assembly shall be made by the legislature, at its first session after the return of every enumeration; and when made, shall remain unaltered until another enumeration shall have been taken. But an apportionment of members of the assembly shall be made by the present legislature, according to the last enumeration taken under the authority of the United States, as nearly as may be. Every county heretofore established, and separately organized, shall always be entitled to one member of the assembly, and no new county shall hereafter be erected, unless its population shall entitle it to a member.

SEC. viii. Any bill may originate in either house of the legislature, and all bills passed by one house may be amended by the other.

SEC. ix. The members of the legislature shall receive for their services, a compensation to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the public treasury; but no increase of the compensation shall take effect during the year in which it shall have been made. And no law shall be passed increasing the compensation of the members of the legislature beyond the sum of three dollars a day.

SEC. x. No member of the legislature shall receive any civil appointment from the governor and senate, or from the legislature, during the term for which he shall have been elected.

SEC. ix. No person, being a member of congress, or holding any judicial or military office under the United States, shall hold a seat in the legislature. And if any person shall, while a member of the legislature, be elected to congress, or appointed to any office, civil or military, under the government of the United States, his acceptance thereof shall vacate his seat.

SEC. xii. Every bill which shall have passed the senate

---

*How are the members of the assembly chosen?—What is said of the compensation of members?—Of their receiving civil appointments?*

and assembly, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the governor. If he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it with his objections to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of the members present shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered; and if approved by two-thirds of the members present, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill, shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the governor within ten days (Sundays excepted,) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the legislature shall, by their adjournment, prevent its return; in which case it shall not be a law.

SEC. XIII. All officers holding their offices during good behaviour, may be removed by joint resolution of the two houses of the legislature, if two-thirds of all the members elected to the assembly, and a majority of all the members elected to the senate, concur therein.

SEC. XIV. The political year shall begin on the first day of January; and the legislature shall every year assemble on the first Tuesday of January, unless a different day shall be appointed by law.

SEC. XV. The next election for governor, lieutenant governor, senators, and members of assembly, shall commence on the first Monday of November, one thousand eight hundred and twentytwo; and all subsequent elections shall be held at such time in the month of October or November as the legislature shall by law provide.

SEC. XVI. The governor, lieutenant governor, senators, and members of assembly, first elected under this constitution, shall enter on the duties of their respective offices on the first day of January, one thousand eight

---

*How can a bill, having passed the senate and assembly, become a law?—How may officers, holding their offices during good behaviour, be removed?*

hundred and twentythree; and the governor, lieutenant governor, senators, and members of assembly, now in office, shall continue to hold the same until the first day of January, one thousand eight hundred and twentythree, and no longer.

#### ARTICLE II.—*Electors.*

SEC. I. Every male citizen of the age of twentyone years, who shall have been an inhabitant of this state one year preceding any election, and for the last six months a resident of the town or county where he may offer his vote; and shall have, within the year next preceding the election, paid a tax to the state or county, assessed upon his real or personal property; or shall, by law, be exempted from taxation; or, being armed and equipped according to law, shall have performed, within that year, military duty in the militia of this state; or who shall be exempted from performing militia duty in consequence of being a fireman in any city, town or village in this state: And also every male citizen of the age of twentyone years, who shall have been, for three years next preceding such election, an inhabitant of this state, and for the last year a resident in the town or county where he may offer his vote; and shall have been, within the last year, assessed to labor upon the public highways, and shall have performed the labor, or paid an equivalent therefor, according to law, shall be entitled to vote in the town or ward where he actually resides, and not elsewhere, for all officers that now are, or hereafter may be, elective by the people: But no man of color, unless he shall have been for three years a citizen of this state, and for one year next preceding any election, shall be seized and possessed of a freehold estate of the value of two hundred and fifty dollars, over and above all debts and incumbrances charged thereon; and shall have been actually rated, and paid a tax thereon, shall be entitled to vote at any such election. And no person of color shall be subject to direct taxation, unless he shall be seized and possessed of such real estate as aforesaid.

---

ART. II. *What qualifications constitute an elector.*

SEC. II. Laws may be passed, excluding from the right of suffrage, persons who have been, or may be, convicted of infamous crimes.

SEC. III. Laws shall be made for ascertaining, by proper proofs, the citizens who shall be entitled to the right of suffrage hereby established.

SEC. IV. All elections by the citizens shall be by ballot, except for such town officers as may by law be directed to be otherwise chosen.

#### ARTICLE III.—*Executive.*

SEC. I. The executive power shall be vested in a governor. He shall hold his office for two years; and a lieutenant governor shall be chosen at the same time, and for the same term.

SEC. II. No person, except a native citizen of the United States, shall be eligible to the office of governor; nor shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not be a freeholder, and shall not have attained the age of thirty years, and have been five years a resident within this state, unless he shall have been absent during that time, on public business of the United States, or of this state.

SEC. III. The governor and lieutenant governor shall be elected at the times and places of choosing members of the legislature. The persons respectively having the highest number of votes for governor and lieutenant governor shall be elected; but in case two or more shall have an equal, and the highest number of votes for governor, or for lieutenant governor, the two houses of the legislature shall, by joint ballot, choose one of the said persons so having an equal and the highest number of votes for governor or lieutenant governor.

SEC. IV. The governor shall be general and commander in chief of all the militia, and admiral of the navy of the state. He shall have power to convene the legislature (or the senate only) on extraordinary occasions. He

---

*What persons are excluded from the right of suffrage?*

ART. III. *In whom is the executive power vested?—How often is he elected?—What qualifications are requisite for this office?—When and in what manner are the governor and Lieut. governor elected?—What powers are vested in the governor?*

shall communicate by message to the legislature at every session, the condition of the state; and recommend such matters to them as he shall judge expedient. He shall transact all necessary business with the officers of government, civil and military. He shall expedite all such measures as may be resolved upon by the legislature, and shall take care that the laws are faithfully executed. He shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the term for which he shall have been elected.

**SEC. v.** The governor shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons after conviction, for all offences except treason and cases of impeachment. Upon convictions for treason, he shall have power to suspend the execution of the sentence until the case shall be reported to the legislature at its next meeting; when the legislature shall either pardon, or direct the execution of the criminal, or grant a further reprieve.

**SEC. vi.** In case of the impeachment of the governor, or his removal from office, death, resignation, or absence from the state, the powers and duties of the office shall devolve upon the lieutenant governor for the residue of the term, or until the governor absent or impeached shall return, or be acquitted. But when the governor shall, with the consent of the legislature, be out of the state in time of war, at the head of a military force thereof, he shall continue commander in chief of all the military force of the state.

**SEC. vii.** The lieutenant governor shall be president of the senate, but shall have only a casting vote therein. If, during a vacancy of the office of governor, the lieutenant governor shall be impeached, displaced, resign, die, or be absent from the state, the president of the senate shall act as governor, until the vacancy shall be filled, or the disability shall cease.

---

*In case of the death or other inability of the governor, on whom do the duties of that office devolve?—What are the duties of the lieutenant governor?*

ARTICLE IV.—*Appointments and Choice.*

SEC. I. Militia officers shall be chosen or appointed as follows:

Captains, subalterns, and non-commissioned officers, shall be chosen by the written votes of the members of their respective companies. Field officers of regiments and separate battalions, by the written votes of the commissioned officers of the respective regiments and separate battalions. Brigadier generals by the field officers of their respective brigades. Major generals, brigadier generals, and commanding officers of regiments or separate battalions, shall appoint the staff officers of their respective divisions, brigades, regiments, or separate battalions.

SEC. II. The governor shall nominate, and with the consent of the senate, appoint all major generals, brigade inspectors, and chiefs of the staff departments, except the adjutant general and commissary general. The adjutant general shall be appointed by the governor.

SEC. III. The legislature shall, by law, direct the time and manner of electing militia officers, and of certifying their elections to the governor.

SEC. IV. The commissioned officers of militia shall be commissioned by the governor; and no commissioned officer shall be removed from office, unless by the senate, on the recommendation of the governor, stating the grounds on which such removal is recommended: or by the decision of a court martial, pursuant to law. The present officers of the militia shall hold their commissions, subject to removal as before provided.

SEC. V. In case the mode of election and appointment of militia officers hereby directed, shall not be found conducive to the improvement of the militia, the legislature may abolish the same, and provide by law for their appointment and removal, if two-thirds of the members present in each house shall concur therein.

---

ART. IV. *How are militia officers chosen?—What officers are appointed by the governor and senate?—What provision is made in relation to the election and appointment of militia officers?*

SEC. vi. The secretary of state, comptroller, treasurer, attorney general, surveyor general, and commissary general, shall be appointed as follows: the senate and assembly shall each openly nominate one person for the said offices respectively; after which, they shall meet together, and if they shall agree in their nominations, the persons so nominated shall be appointed to the office for which he shall be nominated. If they shall disagree, the appointment shall be made by the joint ballot of the senators and members of assembly. The treasurer shall be chosen annually. The secretary of state, comptroller, attorney general, surveyor general, and commissary general, shall hold their offices for three years, unless sooner removed by concurrent resolution of the senate and assembly.

SEC. vii. The governor shall nominate, by message in writing, and with the consent of the senate, shall appoint all judicial officers, except justices of the peace, who shall be appointed in the manner following, that is to say: The board of supervisors in every county in this state, shall, at such times as the legislature may direct, meet together; and they, or a majority of them so assembled, shall nominate so many persons as shall be equal to the number of the justices of the peace, to be appointed in the several towns in the respective counties. And the judges of the respective county courts, or a majority of them, shall also meet and nominate a like number of persons; and it shall be the duty of the said board of supervisors, and judges of the county courts, to compare such nominations, at such a time and place as the legislature may direct; and if, on such comparison, the said boards of supervisors and judges of county courts, shall agree in their nominations, in all, or in part, they shall file a certificate of the nominations in which they shall agree, in the office of the clerk of the county; and the person or persons named in such certificates shall be justices of the peace: and in case of disagreement in whole, or in part, it shall be the further duty of the said boards of

---

*What officers are appointed by the senate and assembly?—In what manner are judicial officers appointed?—In what manner justices of the peace?*

supervisors and judges respectively, to transmit their said nominations so far as they disagree in the same, to the governor, who shall select from the said nominations, and appoint so many justices of the peace as shall be requisite to fill the vacancies. Every person appointed a justice of the peace shall hold his office for four years, unless removed by the county court for causes particularly assigned by the judges of the said court. And no justice of the peace shall be removed, until he shall have notice of the charges made against him, and an opportunity of being heard in his defence.

SEC. viii. Sheriffs, and clerks of counties, including the register and clerk of the city and county of New York, shall be chosen by the electors of the respective counties, once in every three years, and as often as vacancies shall happen. Sheriffs shall hold no other office, and be ineligible for the next three years after the termination of their offices. They may be required by law to renew their security from time to time; and in default of giving such new security, their office shall be deemed vacant. But the county shall never be made responsible for the acts of the sheriff. And the governor may remove any such sheriff, clerk, or register, at any time within the three years for which he shall be elected, giving to such sheriff, clerk, or register, a copy of the charge against him, and an opportunity of being heard in his defence, before any removal shall be made.

SEC. ix. The clerks of courts, except those clerks whose appointment is provided for in the preceding section, shall be appointed by the courts of which they respectively are clerks; and district attorneys by the county courts. Clerks of courts, and district attorneys, shall hold their offices for three years, unless sooner removed by the courts appointing them.

SEC. x. The mayors of all the cities in this state shall be appointed annually, by the common councils of the respective cities.

---

*In what manner are sheriffs, clerks, registers, &c, chosen?—  
By whom are mayors appointed?*

SEC. XI. So many coroners as the legislature may direct, not exceeding four in each county, shall be elected in the same manner as sheriffs, and shall hold their offices for the same term, and be removable in like manner.

SEC. XII. The governor shall nominate, and with the consent of the senate, appoint masters and examiners in chancery, who shall hold their offices for three years, unless sooner removed by the senate, on the recommendation of the governor. The registers and assistant registers shall be appointed by the chancellor, and hold their offices during his pleasure.

SEC. XIII. The clerk of the court of oyer and terminer, and general sessions of the peace, in and for the city and county of New York, shall be appointed by the court of general sessions of the peace in said city, and hold his office during the pleasure of the said court: and such clerks and other officers of courts, whose appointment is not herein provided for, shall be appointed by the several courts, or by the governor, with the consent of the senate, as may be directed by law.

SEC. XIV. The special justices, and the assistant justices, and their clerks, in the city of New York, shall be appointed by the common council of the said city, and shall hold their offices for the same term that the justices of the peace, in the other counties of this state, hold their offices, and shall be removable in like manner.

SEC. XV. All officers heretofore elective by the people, shall continue to be elected; and all other officers, whose appointment is not provided for by this constitution, and all officers whose offices may be hereafter created by law, shall be elected by the people, or appointed, as may by law be directed.

SEC. XVI. Where the duration of any office is not prescribed by this constitution, it may be declared by law; and if not so declared, such office shall be held during the pleasure of the authority making the appointment.

#### ARTICLE V.—Courts.

SEC. I. The court for the trial of impeachments, and

---

—*Masters and examiners in chancery?*

the correction of errors, shall consist of the president of the senate, the senators, the chancellor, and the justices of the supreme court, or the major part of them; but when an impeachment shall be prosecuted against the chancellor, or any justice of the supreme court, the person so impeached shall be suspended from exercising his office, until his acquittal; and when an appeal from a decree in chancery shall be heard, the chancellor shall inform the court of the reasons for his decree, but shall have no voice in the final sentence; and when a writ of error shall be brought on a judgment of the supreme court, the justices of that court shall assign the reasons for their judgment, but shall not have a voice for its affirmance or reversal.

SEC. II. The assembly shall have the power of impeaching all civil officers of this state for mal and corrupt conduct in office, and for high crimes and misdemeanors; but a majority of all the members elected shall concur in an impeachment. Before the trial of an impeachment, the members of the court shall take an oath or affirmation, truly and impartially to try and determine the charge in question, according to evidence; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present. Judgment, in cases of impeachment, shall not extend farther than the removal from office, and disqualification to hold, and enjoy, any office of honor, trust, or profit, under this state; but the party convicted shall be liable to indictment, and punishment, according to law.

SEC. III. The chancellor and justices of the supreme court shall hold their offices during good behaviour, or until they shall attain the age of sixty years.

SEC. IV. The supreme court shall consist of a chief justice, and two justices, any of whom may hold the court.

SEC. V. The state shall be divided, by law, into a convenient number of circuits, not less than four, nor exceeding eight, subject to alteration by the legislature, from time

---

ART. V. *Of what shall the court for the trial of impeachments consist?—What body have the power of impeachment?—How far may judgment extend?—How long do the chancellor and justices of the supreme court hold their offices?—Of what does the supreme court consist?*

to time, as the public good may require ; for each of which, a circuit judge shall be appointed, in the same manner, and hold his office by the same tenure, as the justices of the supreme court ; and who shall possess the powers of a justice of the supreme court at chambers, and in the trial of issues joined in the supreme court, and in courts of oyer and terminer and jail delivery. And such equity powers may be vested in the said circuit judges, or in the county courts, or in such other subordinate courts as the legislature may by law direct, subject to the appellate jurisdiction of the chancellor.

SEC. VI. Judges of the county courts, and recorders of cities, shall hold their offices for five years, but may be removed by the senate, on the recommendation of the governor, for causes to be stated in such recommendation.

SEC. VII. Neither the chancellor nor justices of the supreme court, nor any circuit judge, shall hold any other office or public trust. All votes for any elective office, given by the legislature, or the people, for the chancellor, or a justice of the supreme court, or circuit judge, during his continuance in his judicial office, shall be void.

#### ARTICLE VI.—*Oath of Office.*

SEC. I. Members of the legislature, and all officers, executive and judicial, except such inferior officers as may by law be exempted, shall, before they enter on the duties of their respective offices, take and subscribe the following oath or affirmation. “ I do solemnly swear, (or affirm, as the case may be,) that I will support the constitution of the United States, and the constitution of the state of New York ; and that I will faithfully discharge the duties of the office of \_\_\_\_\_, according to the best of my ability.”

And no other oath, declaration, or test, shall be required as a qualification for any office or public trust.

---

*In what manner are circuit judges appointed?—How long do judges of county courts and recorders hold their offices?—Can the chancellor, and justices of the supreme and circuit courts, hold any other office?*

ART. VI. *What is required of the members of the legislature and executive and judicial officers, previous to their entering on the duties of their offices?*

ARTICLE VII.—*Rights and Prohibitions.*

SEC. I. No member of this state shall be disfranchised, or deprived of any of the rights or privileges secured to any citizen thereof, unless by the law of the land, or the judgment of his peers.

SEC. II. The trial by jury in all cases in which it has been heretofore used, shall remain inviolable for ever; and no new court shall be instituted but such as shall proceed according to the course of the common law, except such courts of equity as the legislature is herein authorised to establish.

SEC. III. The free exercise and enjoyment of religious profession and worship, without discrimination or preference, shall for ever be allowed in this state to all mankind; but the liberty of conscience hereby secured, shall not be so construed as to excuse acts of licentiousness, or justify practices inconsistent with the peace or safety of this state.

SEC. IV. And whereas the ministers of the gospel are, by their profession, dedicated to the service of God and the cure of souls, and ought not to be diverted from the great duties of their functions; therefore, no minister of the gospel, or priest of any denomination whatsoever, shall, at any time hereafter, under any pretence or description whatever, be eligible to, or capable of holding, any civil or military office or place within this state.

SEC. V. The militia of this state shall, at all times hereafter, be armed and disciplined, and in readiness for service; but all such inhabitants of this state, of any religious denomination whatever, as from scruples of conscience, may be averse to bearing arms, shall be excused therefrom, by paying to the state an equivalent in money; and the legislature shall provide by law for the collection of such equivalent, to be estimated according to the expense, in time and money, of an ordinary able bodied militia man.

SEC. VI. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion, or invasion, the public safety may require its suspension.

---

ART. VII. *What is said of disfranchisement?—Of trial by jury?—Of liberty of conscience in religious worship?—From what are the ministers of the gospel excluded?—In what cases may persons be excused from military duty?—What regulation as to suspension of habeas corpus?*

SEC. VII. No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, (except in cases of impeachment, and in cases of the militia, when in actual service, and the land and naval forces in time of war, or which this state may keep, with the consent of congress, in time of peace, and in cases of petit larceny, under the regulation of the legislature,) unless on presentment or indictment of a grand jury ; and in every trial on impeachment or indictment, the party accused shall be allowed counsel as in civil actions. No person shall be subject, for the same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb ; nor shall he be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself ; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law : Nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

SEC. VIII. Every citizen may freely speak, write and publish his sentiments, on all subjects, being responsible for the abuse of that right ; and no law shall be passed to restrain or abridge the liberty of speech, or of the press. In all prosecutions or indictments for libels, the truth may be given in evidence to the jury ; and if it shall appear to the jury, that the matter charged as libellous is true, and was published with good motives, and for justifiable ends, the party shall be acquitted ; and the jury shall have the right to determine the law and the fact.

SEC. IX. The assent of two-thirds of the members elected to each branch of the legislature, shall be requisite to every bill appropriating the public moneys or property, for local or private purposes, or creating, continuing, altering, or renewing any body politic or corporate.

SEC. X. The proceeds of all lands belonging to this state, except such parts thereof as may be reserved or appropriated to public use, or ceded to the United States, which shall hereafter be sold or disposed of, together with the fund denominated the common school fund, shall be and remain a perpetual fund ; the interest of which shall be inviolably appropriated and applied to the support of

---

*What privileges are allowed to persons held to answer for criminal offences ?—What regulations in relation to freedom of speech and of the press ?—What is requisite to bills appropriating the public money ?*

common schools throughout this state. Rates of toll, not less than those agreed to by the canal commissioners, and set forth in their report to the legislature of the twelfth of March, one thousand eight hundred and twentyone, shall be imposed on, and collected from all parts of the navigable communications between the great western and northern lakes and the Atlantic ocean, which now are, or hereafter shall be made and completed: And the said tolls, together with the duties on the manufacture of all salt, as established by the act of the fifteenth of April, one thousand eight hundred and seventeen; and the duties on goods sold at auction, excepting therefrom, the sum of thirtythree thousand five hundred dollars, otherwise appropriated by the said act; and the amount of the revenue, established by the act of the legislature of the thirtieth of March, one thousand eight hundred and twenty, in lieu of the tax upon steam-boat passengers, shall be, and remain inviolably appropriated and applied to the completion of such navigable communications, and to the payment of the interest, and reimbursement of the capital of the money already borrowed, or which hereafter shall be borrowed, to make and complete the same. And neither the rates of toll, on the said navigable communications, nor the duties on the manufacture of salt aforesaid, nor the duties on goods sold at auction, as established by the act of the fifteenth of April, one thousand eight hundred and seventeen, nor the amount of the revenue established by the act of March the thirtieth, one thousand eight hundred and twenty, in lieu of the tax upon steam-boat passengers, shall be reduced or diverted, at any time before the full and complete payment of the principal and interest of the money borrowed, or to be borrowed, as aforesaid. And the legislature shall never sell nor dispose of the salt springs belonging to this state, nor the lands contiguous thereto, which may be necessary or convenient for their use; nor the said navigable communications, nor any part or section thereof; but the same shall be, and remain the property of this state.

SEC. XI. No lottery shall hereafter be authorised in this

state ; and the legislature shall pass laws to prevent the sale of all lottery tickets within this state, except in lotteries already provided for by law.

SEC. XII. No purchase or contract for the sale of lands in this state, made since the fourteenth day of October, one thousand seven hundred and seventyfive, or which may hereafter be made, of, or with the Indians in this state, shall be valid, unless made under the authority, and with the consent of the legislature.

SEC. XIII. Such parts of the common law, and of the acts of the legislature of the colony of New York, as together did form the law of the said colony, on the nineteenth day of April, one thousand seven hundred and seventyfive, and the resolutions of the congress of the said colony, and of the convention of the state of New York, in force on the twentieth day of April, one thousand seven hundred and seventyseven, which have not since expired, or been repealed or altered ; and such acts of the legislature of this state as are now in force, shall be and continue the law of this state, subject to such alteration as the legislature shall make concerning the same. But all such parts of the common law, and such of the said acts, or parts thereof, as are repugnant to this constitution, are hereby abrogated.

SEC. XIV. All grants of land within this state, made by the King of Great Britain, or persons acting under his authority, after the fourteenth day of October, one thousand seven hundred and seventyfive, shall be null and void ; but nothing contained in this constitution shall affect any grants of land within this state, made by the authority of the said King, or his predecessors, or shall annul any charters to bodies politic and corporate, by him or them made before that day ; or shall affect any such grants or charters since made by this state, or by persons acting under its authority ; or shall impair the obligation of any debts contracted by the state, or individuals, or bodies corporate, or any other rights of property, or any suits, actions, rights of action, or other proceedings in courts of justice.

---

*What in relation to purchase of land from the Indians ?—  
What parts of the common law are confirmed by this constitution ?  
—What abrogated ?*

ARTICLE VIII.—*Amendments.*

SEC. I. Any amendment or amendments to this constitution may be proposed in the senate or assembly ; and if the same shall be agreed to by a majority of the members elected to each of the two houses, such proposed amendment or amendments shall be entered on their journals, with the yeas and nays taken thereon, and referred to the legislature then next to be chosen ; and shall be published, for three months previous to the time of making such choice ; and if, in the legislature next chosen as aforesaid, such proposed amendment or amendments shall be agreed to by two thirds of all the members elected to each house, then it shall be the duty of the legislature to submit such proposed amendment or amendments to the people, in such manner and at such time as the legislature shall prescribe ; and if the people shall approve and ratify such amendment or amendments, by a majority of the electors qualified to vote for members of the legislature voting thereon, such amendment or amendments shall become part of the constitution.

ARTICLE IX.—*When in force.*

SEC. I. This constitution shall be in force from the last day of December, in the year one thousand eight hundred and twentytwo. But all those parts of the same which relate to the right of suffrage ; the division of the state into senate districts ; the number of members of the assembly to be elected in pursuance of this constitution ; the apportionment of members of assembly ; the elections hereby directed to commence on the first Monday of November, in the year one thousand eight hundred and twentytwo ; the continuance of the members of the present legislature in office until the first day of January, in the year one thousand eight hundred and twentythree, and the prohibition against authorising lotteries ; the prohibition against appropriating the public moneys or property for local or private purposes, or creating, continuing, altering, or renewing any body politic or corporate without the assent of

---

ART. VIII. *How may the constitution be amended ?—By whom must such amendment be ratified ?*

ART. IX. *When did this constitution come in force ?*

two-thirds of the members elected to each branch of the legislature, shall be in force and take effect from the last day of February next. The members of the present legislature shall, on the first Monday of March next, take and subscribe an oath or affirmation to support this constitution, so far as the same shall then be in force. Sheriffs, clerks of counties, and coroners, shall be elected at the election hereby directed to commence on the first Monday of November, in the year one thousand eight hundred and twentytwo; but they shall not enter on the duties of their offices before the first day of January then next following. The commissions of all persons holding civil offices on the last day of December, one thousand eight hundred and twentytwo, shall expire on that day; but the officers then in commission, may respectively continue to hold their said offices until new appointments or elections shall take place under this constitution.

SEC. II. The existing laws relative to the manner of notifying, holding and conducting elections, making returns, and canvassing votes, shall be in force, and observed, in respect to the elections hereby directed to commence on the first Monday of November, in the year one thousand eight hundred and twentytwo, so far as the same are applicable. And the present legislature shall pass such other and further laws as may be requisite for the execution of the provisions of this constitution, in respect to elections.

SEC. II. *Political Divisions.* To facilitate the operations of government, the state is divided into fiftyfour separately organised counties, which are subdivided into about six hundred and sixty townships. Albany was in 1807 constituted the capital of the state, where the sessions of the Legislature have since that period been regularly held. Each of the counties have likewise a capital or *county town*,

---

II. What political divisions in New York? — What is the capital? — What is said of the counties?

where the courts are held, and the county business transacted. The state is also divided agreeable to the constitution into eight senatorial districts for the election of senators to the state legislature, and into thirty congressional districts, for the election of representatives to the congress of the United States.

The following presents a list of the counties in 1824, arranged according to their population. New York, Oneida, Dutchess, Otsego, Onondaga, Orange, Rensselaer, Genesee, Cayuga, Washington, Columbia, Albany, Montgomery, Saratoga, Ontario, Jefferson, Westchester, Madison, Chenango, Herkimer, Ulster, Delaware, Munroe, Tompkins, Suffolk, Schoharie, Greene, Steuben, Queen's, Wayne, Livingston, Seneca, Cortlandt, St Lawrence, Erie, Tioga, Schenectady, Essex, Chatauque, Oswego, Clinton, Putnam, King's, Broome, Yates, Warren, Allegany, Lewis, Sullivan, Rockland, Niagara, Richmond, Franklin, Cataraugus.

SEC. III. *Cities and Villages.* The state contains five cities, and a large number of incorporated villages. The cities are New York, Albany, Troy, and Hudson, situated on Hudson's river; and Schenectady, on the Mohawk. Among the most important villages, are Utica, Rochester, Brooklyn, Buffalo, Lockport, Lansingburgh, Canandaigua, Auburn, Geneva, Sackett's Harbor, and Poughkeepsie. Some of these, and many others, particularly on the line of the canal, have arisen within a few years, and increased with astonishing rapidity.

New York, the metropolis of the state, is situated in the southern part of the Island of Manhattan. It is

---

*Mention some of the most populous counties.*

SEC. III. What number of cities, and what are they?—What can you say of villages?

*What is said of New York?*

largest, and, in a commercial point of view, the most important city in the union. Its charter was first granted in 1686, and has subsequently received frequent alterations and amendments. It was renewed with additional privileges by Gov. Montgomery, in 1730, and confirmed by the provincial legislature in 1732.

According to the charter, the city of New York embraces the whole of York, or *Manhattan* Island. This entire tract has been laid out by act of government into streets, squares, and roads; and the location, which has been formed with great care and skill, is made perpetual, no person being permitted to erect buildings on the grounds thus appropriated to public use. Of this extensive location, commencing at the southern extremity, near three miles have been filled up along the Hudson, and about four on East River. In a looser sense, the buildings are spread over most of the Island. A great number of villas are scattered throughout eight or ten miles from the southern point; and with these, many houses of an inferior class, belonging to gardeners, farmers, and mechanics, who reside in them through the year. The principal collection of these buildings is contained in Haerlem village, and its neighborhood. Manhattanville is a similar collection near the Hudson. The villas are placed in almost all the pleasant positions on the island, and spread over it a brilliancy and cheerfulness not surpassed in the United States.\*

The *city* of New York, according to more general acceptance, limited to about four miles of the southern extremity of the island, is from half a mile to two miles in width, and from eight to ten in circuit. The streets of the southern part, which is the most ancient, are irregular, many of them extremely narrow, and laid out with little regard to beauty or convenience. The northern part, having been more recently built, is laid out with better taste, and presents many spacious and elegant avenues. The three principal streets are *Pearl street*, *Broadway*,

\* *Dwight.*

*What does it embrace according to the charter?—What is the extent of the compact part?—Mention some of the principal streets.*

and *Greenwich street*. These run the whole length of the city, and are intersected, though not at right angles, by streets, running from river to river. *Pearl street*, near the East river, pursues a narrow and devious course through a populous part of the city, and is the seat of great business. *Broadway* passes in a straight line over the highest ground between the two rivers, and is the noblest avenue of the kind in America. *Greenwich street* pursues a nearly straight course between *Broadway* and the *Hudson*, and is wide and elegant. *Wall street*, the principal seat of the banks, insurance, and broker's offices, runs from *Broadway*, across *Pearl street* to the river. *Chattham street* is a noble spaceway, leading from *Broadway* into *Bowery road*. *Washington street* is a splendid avenue near the *Hudson*. The other principal streets are *Fulton street*, *Maiden lane*, *John street*, *Nassau*, *Broad street*, *Prince*, *William*, *Cherry*, *Hudson*, and *Cortlandt streets*. The streets are generally well paved, with good sidewalks, and every part of the city well supplied with lamps.

The *Battery* is a fine promenade at the southern extremity of the city, containing several acres. It commands an extensive view of the Bay and Harbor of New York with the surrounding shores, and was the site of the early fortification, from which it derives its name. The *Bowling Green* is a circular piece of ground at the foot of *Broadway*, near the *Battery*. The *Park* is another beautiful promenade of about four acres, on the south side of *Broadway*, and near the centre of the city.

The modern houses in New York are mostly of brick, and generally well built. Many of them are elegant. Among the public edifices, are now included more than one hundred churches, which are occupied by the various denominations for religious worship. The whole number in 1821, according to a list then published, was seventy-one—as follows: Episcopal 15, Dutch Reformed 9, Associate Reformed 5, Presbyterian 10, Methodist 9, Baptist 7, Friends, or Quakers 3, Independents 3, C. e. gational, or Unitarian 1, Moravian 1, German Lutheran 1,

Universalist 1, Roman Catholic 2, Mariners 1, Mission House 1, New Jerusalem 1, Jews' Synagogue 1. Of these, St John's in Hudson Square, is one of the richest, and, in the interior, one of the most beautiful. The steeple of St Paul's is probably not excelled by any in the Union. The front of the new church in Wall street is handsome.

The City Hall, situated at the head of the Park, is a noble specimen of architecture, and one of the most superb buildings in the United States. This edifice was begun in 1803, by order of the corporation, and completed in 1812, at an expense of \$520,000. The building extends from east to west two hundred and sixteen feet by one hundred and five. The south, east, and west fronts are faced with white marble, enriched with two regular orders of architecture, the Ionic and Corinthian, raised on a rustic basement of brown freestone, nine feet in height. A neat stone balustrade surrounds the building, and hides a great part of the roof. The centre has an attic story, which is crowned with a well proportioned cupola surmounted by the figure of Justice.

The basement floor contains the police office, and large accommodations for the city watch, the marine court, and other offices.

The principal entrance is on the south front, by a terrace walk, which extends the length of the building, and is about forty feet in breadth. This is raised three feet above a level of the Park. From this walk, a flight of steps ascend to an Ionic colonade, and from this you pass into a large vestibule, adjoining a corridor that runs lengthwise of the building and communicates with the different apartments and staircases. This floor contains the Mayor's office, and all the offices that belong to the city and county, together with a Grand Jury room, Law Library, and other apartments. In the centre of the building, facing the entrance, is a large circular stone staircase, with a double flight of steps upheld without any apparent support on the wall, which surrounds the stairs.

On the level of the second floor, stand ten marble columns of the Corinthian order, with a circular gallery around them. The columns are fluted, and the entabla-

---

*Give a description of the City Hall.*

ture fully enriched ; the whole covered by a hemispherical ceiling, enriched with sunk compartments filled with patera, and lighted by a large skylight, the whole of which produces a fine effect. The second floor contains four large court rooms, two jury rooms, two offices, a gallery for paintings, and a Common Council chamber. The latter is finished in a very superb style, and richly ornamented with carvings in stone and wood, which are well executed.

Among other public edifices, the *Hospital, Alms House, Colleges, Theatres, Exchange, State and United States Arsenals, New York Institution, State Prison, Penitentiary, Bridewell*, and several of the *Banks* are conspicuous.

For the more convenient administration of justice, and the regulation of its internal police, the city is divided into ten wards. It is governed by a Mayor, ten Aldermen, and ten Assistants, who are styled the " Mayor, Aldermen, and Commonality." The Mayor is elected by the Common Council ; and the Aldermen, Assistants, and other officers, by the several wards. The *Fire Department* is extensive, well organized, and effective. The numerous societies, for religious, eleemosynary, literary, scientific, and political purposes, form too large a list to be here enumerated.

The number of houses in the city of New York in 1820 amounted to about 20,000, and the population to 123,706. Since that time the number of buildings, the business, and population of the place have increased with greater rapidity, than at any former period. The number of houses is now (1828) estimated at about 30,000, and the number of inhabitants at above 150,000. The western and northern canals have brought to this city, and must continue to bring to it, an immense accumulation of business and wealth. New York has already become the commercial emporium of America. Considering its local advantages, and the enterprise of its inhabitants, we can hardly set bounds to its future prosperity and importance.

---

*What other public edifices are mentioned?—What can you say of the population of New York?—What of its future prosperity and importance?*

*Albany* is the capital, and, next to New York, the largest and most important city in the state. It was founded by the Dutch, in 1623, and then called *Fort Orange*. It received its present name on its surrender to the English in 1664, and was first incorporated as a city in 1686. It has the oldest charter of any city in the Union, and, next to *Jamestown* in *Virginia*, is the oldest settlement. It is situated on the west bank of the *Hudson*, one hundred and fortyfour miles from New York, and near the head of sloop navigation. It is a place of large and rapidly increasing business.

The principal streets, with the exception of *State street*, run parallel with the river: many of them are narrow, but several are broad, and most of them well paved. *State street* extends from the river to the capitol, through a central and opulent part of the city: the upper part presents a spacious and elegant avenue. From this diverge *North* and *South Market* streets, extending to the two opposite extremities of the city, and embracing a large share of the population and business. Among the other most important avenues, are *North* and *South Pearl, Dock, Quay*, and *Washington* streets. The *Public Square* is a spacious and elegant opening on the east of the capitol, and is handsomely ornamented with trees and shrubbery.

Most of the old houses are built in the Dutch style, and are of an indifferent appearance; but the new houses are now, by far, the most numerous, and many of them erected in a style of elegance highly creditable to the taste of the inhabitants. Among the public buildings, the *Capitol* is the most important. This edifice, situated at the head of *State street*, has a front of ninety feet on the east, and one hundred and fifteen on the north. The walls, fifty feet in height, comprising two stories and a basement of ten feet, are faced with freestone, from the quarries on the *Hudson*. The east front has a portico, with four marble Ionic columns, thirtythree feet in height, exclusive of the entablature. The roof is of a pyramidal form, surmounted by a cupola, the dome of which, twenty feet in diameter,

---

*What is said of Albany?—How is it situated?—What public buildings does it contain?—What can you say of the Capitol?*

is supported by eight insulated Ionic columns. The dome sustains a pedestal, on which is placed a statue of Themis, eleven feet in height, carved in wood, with appropriate emblems. The *Assembly* Chamber, fiftysix feet by fifty, and twentyeight high; the *Senate* Chamber, fifty feet by twenty-eight, and twentyeight high, with the room for the *Council of Revision* and the *Supreme Court* room, are elegantly finished, and richly ornamented in stucco. In addition to these, the building contains a Common Council Chamber, Jury rooms, Mayor's Court room, a room for the Society of Arts, for the State Library, and the Board of Agriculture, with the County Clerk's office, and other apartments. Among the other public buildings, are the *State Hall*, the *Albany Academy*, *Lancaster School House*, *State Arsenal*, *Alms House*, *Jail*, three *Banks*, and twelve churches, occupied by the several denominations, for religious worship. Some of these have been recently erected, and are highly beautiful structures.

The city of Albany is divided into five wards, and governed by a Mayor, Recorder, ten Aldermen, and ten Assistant Aldermen: who are styled, "the Mayor, Aldermen, and Commonalty." The Fire Department is efficient, well organized, and provided with engines. The population of the city, in 1825, amounted to near sixteen thousand. Since the completion of the Western and Northern Canals, Albany has received great accessions of business and population, and from its local advantages is probably destined to be one of the largest inland cities in America.

*Troy*, the third city in the state in point of population, is a beautiful and flourishing place, situated on the east bank of the Hudson, at the head of tide water, six miles above Albany, and three miles below the confluence of that river with the Mohawk. It was first incorporated as a village in 1801, and as a city in 1816. It has experienced a rapid increase, and has already arisen to a considerable degree of opulence. It is a place of large business, which has been greatly augmented since the completion of the canals. The *Poesten-kill* and *Wynats-kill*,

---

*How is Albany governed? — What is its population?*  
*What can you say of Troy?*

two fine mill streams, afford a valuable water power, which is extensively applied to the purposes of manufacture. The inhabitants have been justly celebrated for their industry and enterprise.

Along the bank of the river, which here makes a considerable bend, winds *River street*, the principal mart of business. Notwithstanding its irregularity, it is a spacious and elegant avenue. In rear of this, the town is regularly laid out into squares, by streets crossing each other at nearly right angles. Most of them are sixty feet in width, and several well paved. The houses are built in the modern style, and are highly creditable to the taste of the inhabitants. Many of them are highly beautiful. The public buildings are a *Court House*, *Jail*, *Clerk's Office*, several *Banks*, and the houses for the *Lancaster School*, and *Female Seminary*. In 1823, there were six churches, occupied by the different denominations for religious worship; and since that period, several other elegant structures have been erected for this purpose.

*Mount Ida* and *Mount Olympus* are two fine eminences, of considerable elevation, a short distance from the river, and command an interesting view of the city and surrounding country.

The *City of Troy* is divided into six wards, and governed by a Mayor, Recorder, and six Aldermen, with four Assistants. The population in 1820 was above five thousand; and in 1823, was estimated at about six thousand. Since that time, it has probably increased with greater rapidity than at any former period.

*Hudson*, one of the largest and most important towns on the river of that name, is situated one hundred and seventeen miles above New York, and occupies a commanding eminence on the eastern bank, at the head of ship navigation. The site of the city is on a high point, projecting into the Hudson, and terminating in a bold, rocky cliff, washed on each side by bays of considerable extent. It was founded in 1784, and has rapidly increased in business and population. The city is regularly laid out into squares by streets crossing each other at right angles.

---

*What is its population? — What can you say of Hudson?*

The streets are generally spacious, and the houses well built. *Warren* street, the most important avenue, is one mile in length, and the principal seat of business. The public buildings are a *Court House*, *Prison*, *Academy*, several *School* houses, and five houses for religious worship. *Hudson* is governed by a Mayor, Aldermen, and Assistants, who are annually elected by the citizens. The population in 1820 amounted to above five thousand three hundred. In point of trade and manufactures, it probably holds the fourth rank in the state.

*Schenectady* is situated on the south side of the Mohawk, about sixteen miles from its confluence with the Hudson. It is built on the site of an ancient Indian town, called by the aborigines, *Can-nugh-harie-gagh-harie*,\* and is one of the oldest European settlements in the state. The city is intersected by the Erie Canal, and is a place of considerable business. It is regularly laid out into streets, which are well paved, and provided with side walks. The houses are generally constructed in the ancient style, and have rather an inferior appearance. The public buildings are two *College Edifices*, a *Male* and *Female Academy*, four *Churches*, *Court House*, *Jail*, *Almshouse*, *Bank*, and the buildings for the *Lancaster* and *Common Schools*. The bridge across the Mohawk at this place is about one thousand feet in length, and a noble piece of architecture. The population of Schenectady is about four thousand.

*Utica* is a pleasant and flourishing village, situated on the south bank of the Mohawk, about eighty miles above Schenectady. It is intersected by the Erie Canal, and is one of the largest and most important of the western towns. The streets are conveniently arranged, and are generally broad and well paved. The houses are built in the modern style of architecture, and are many of them highly beautiful. The entire village has an air of neatness and elegance, which is seldom surpassed. Among the public buildings are a *Court House*, two *Banks*, and one or more

\* Translated, "A great multitude collected together." It was the *Capital* of the *Mohawks*, and a populous town. The present name of this city was applied by the Indians to Albany, and pronounced by them *Seagh-nack-tea-du*, which means *beyond the pine plains*.

*Churches* for almost every denomination. Several of the latter are uncommonly splendid. Utica has a population of above five thousand, and is a place of great wealth.

*Rochester*, situated on the Genesee river, is the largest and most flourishing village in the state. It has arisen within a few years, and increased in business and population with unparalleled rapidity. It was first settled in 1812, and it was not till the latter part of 1814, that any considerable addition was made to the number of its inhabitants. In 1818, the village contained 1049 inhabitants; in 1820, 1502; in 1822, they were estimated at 2700; in 1824, the population amounted to 4274; in 1825, to 5271; and in 1827, to 10,818.

Rochester contains a large number of fine dwellings and stores, with several splendid public edifices. Among the public buildings are a *Court House*, *Jail*, *Market*, and six churches. Several of the latter are costly and elegant structures. The village contains an immense water power, which is extensively applied to the purposes of manufacture. There are ten large flour mills, which make annually 200,000 barrels of flour. About nine million feet of lumber are here sawed annually. The present population is estimated at about twelve thousand. The village has been created by the Western Canal, which passes through it, and has grown up with so much rapidity, that its future prosperity and importance will hardly admit of an estimate.

"The aqueduct at this place over the Genesee, is one of the finest works on the course of the canal; and is no less remarkable for its usefulness, than for its architectural beauty and strength. It is borne across the river's channel on ten arches of hewn stone. The river dashes rapidly along beneath, while boats, with goods and passengers, glide safely above."\*

*Brooklyn* is an opulent and populous village, in the town of that name, situated on Long Island, opposite, and three-fourths of a mile from the city of New York. It occupies an elevated position, and with the adjacent country, presents a great variety of highly beautiful and elegant

\* Northern Traveller.

---

— *Of Rochester?* — *What important work on the Canal at this place?* — *What is said of Brooklyn?*

views. It is among the oldest settlements in the state, and has long been a place of very considerable population and business. It contains near seven hundred houses, four churches, and some extensive manufactorys. The whole population of the *town* of Brooklyn, in 1820, was 7175, and has since that period been considerably augmented. The village is now in a flourishing condition.

*Buffalo*, situated on the Niagara river, at the east end of Lake Erie, is one of the largest and most flourishing villages in the state. It occupies a gentle acclivity, rising from the immediate vicinity of the lake. It was burned by the British in 1814, and has since been rebuilt in a superior style of elegance. "The principal street runs along the ridge of the hill, looking out upon Lake Erie to the horizon, and is ornamented with several fine blocks of brick stores and handsome dwelling houses, together with several public buildings. A large piece of ground has been left in the middle of the town for a public square, where several streets meet, and which it is intended to ornament with public edifices. A fine promenade has also been laid out on the brow of the hill towards the lake. This is called the *Terrace*, and affords a pleasant view upon the lake, the harbor, and the canal. In 1825, Buffalo contained six thousand inhabitants."\* The business and population of the place are rapidly increasing, and from its superior commercial advantages, it must ultimately become one of the most important inland towns in America.

*Lockport*, the county town of Niagara county, is situated on the Western Canal, sixtythree miles west of Rochester. It has been created by the canal, and has grown up with very great rapidity. It has a valuable water power, and is a place of large and increasing business. The population in 1823, amounted to 1458, and has since that period been greatly augmented. Its future prospects cannot at this time be safely anticipated. Its local advantages must, however, render it a place of no small importance. The Canal here descends from the *Mountain*

\* Northern Traveller.

*Ridge to the Genesee Level*, by five double combined locks, each of twelve feet descent. These locks are among the most interesting works on the Canal.

*Lansingburgh*, situated in the southwest part of the township of that name, on the east bank of the Hudson, and three miles above Troy, is a handsome and flourishing village. It is regularly laid out into squares, by spacious and convenient streets. It contains about three hundred houses, a *Bank*, five *Churches*, and two buildings occupied by an *Academy*. It is a place of considerable business, and has 1650 inhabitants.

*Canandaigua* is situated on a gentle acclivity at the north end of the lake, and near the centre of the township of that name. It is the capital of Ontario county, and one of the most interesting of the western villages. The principal avenue, rising from the lake and extending along the ridge of the hill, is spacious, and contains many elegant buildings. Near the centre of the village is an open area of liberal extent commanding a beautiful view of the adjacent scenery, and finely ornamented with public buildings. Among the public edifices, are a *Court House*, *Jail*, three *Churches*, *State Arsenal*, and an *Academy*. In the beauty of its position, and the style of its buildings, it is not probably surpassed by any village of equal extent in the Union. It is located in the midst of a fertile tract of country, and is a place of much business. It contains about two thousand inhabitants, and is now in a flourishing condition.

*Auburn*, situated on the outlet of the Owasco Lake, and near the eastern boundary of the township of Aurelius, is a pleasant village, and the capital of Cayuga county. It contains about 150 houses, many of which are elegant, with the county buildings, and other public edifices. Of these the most important is the *State Prison*. This was erected in 1817, at an expense of \$360,000; and is probably the best constructed building of the kind in the United States. Auburn is a place of some business, and contains 1800 inhabitants.

---

— Of *Lansingburgh*? — Of *Canandaigua*? — Of *Auburn*?

*Geneva* is a beautiful and flourishing village, situated at the north end and near the outlet of Seneca lake. It occupies a pleasant elevation, commanding an extensive view of the lake and surrounding country. It contains above three hundred houses, shops, and stores, with several handsome *Churches*, a *College*, and an *Academy*. It is a place of much business and enterprise, and has about 1800 inhabitants.

*Sackett's Harbor* is situated on the southwest side of Black River Bay, eight miles from Lake Ontario, and is a place of considerable business. It was founded in 1801, and during the late war was an important military and naval position. It has a fine harbor, and commands an extensive trade upon the lake. It contains about two thousand inhabitants, and is now in a prosperous condition.

*Poughkeepsie*, situated in the town of that name, on the east bank of the Hudson, and 74 miles above New York, is a village of considerable importance, and the capital of Dutchess county. The inequality of the surface along the river's bank gives the place a singular and romantic appearance. The village contains the *County Buildings*, a *Bank*, an *Academy*, five *Churches*, and about six hundred houses, stores, and shops. It is a place of some business, and contains about 2700 inhabitants.

SEC. IV. *Agriculture.* Agricultural pursuits constitute the employment of an important and highly respectable portion of the community. A large part of the state presents a productive soil; and the manner of cultivation, which has already attained to a high degree of perfection, is rapidly improving. In 1819, the subject received the attention of the legislature; and an act was passed, making provision for the forming of county societies, for the promotion of agriculture and household manufactures, and the establishment of a *Board of Agriculture*, to

---

IV. What is said of agriculture? — What encouragement has been afforded by the legislature?

consist of the presidents or delegates of the county societies. Ten thousand dollars per annum, for four years, was appropriated to the use of these societies, and one thousand to the Board of Agriculture.

Under this act a large number of societies were formed. The Board was organized, and published its first volume of "*Memoirs*" in 1821. The success that attended these efforts induced the legislature to extend the act to an additional term of four years. The societies annually expend, in premiums, double the amount appropriated from the treasury. Annual Fairs are held in each of the counties, for the exhibition and sale of products, and for competition in the manual operations of agriculture. The publications of the Board, comprising essays on husbandry, and the results of experiments in various parts of the state, are highly respectable, and tend rapidly to accelerate the march of improvement.

About three-fourths of the entire population of the state are engaged in agricultural pursuits. Six million acres of land, less than one-fourth part of the area of the state, are at present under improvement. *Wheat* is the most important product, and is exported in large quantities. *Indian Corn*, *Rye*, and *Barley*, are extensively cultivated. The number of *Cattle*, according to the state census of 1821, was 1,219,000; *Horses*, 263,000; *Sheep*, 2,153,000.\* As connected with agriculture, may also be men-

\* The round numbers are here given. For the exact numbers, see Spafford's *Gazetteer*, published in 1824.

---

What success attended these efforts?

What part of the population are engaged in agriculture?—  
What portion of the state is under improvement?—What are the most important products?

tioned the fabrics of household manufacture. The quantity of cloth of various kinds manufactured in families, in 1821, amounted to above 10,000,000 yards.

SEC. v. *Manufactures.* Notwithstanding the competition of foreign manufactures, those of New York may be said to be in a flourishing condition. *Iron* and *Salt* are among the most important articles; and the latter constitutes a valuable source of revenue to the state. In addition to the cloths made in families, extensive *Cotton* and *Woollen* manufactories furnish an immense quantity of these fabrics. The manufacture of flour is carried on to a great extent in most parts of the state; and, in value, probably exceeds that of any other article.

Among the articles of manufacture may likewise be enumerated *Malt*, and *Distilled Liquors*, *Leather*, *Cordage*, *Refined Sugar*, *Glass*, *Paper*, *Hats*, and *Oil*. In the newly settled parts of the state, large quantities of *Pot* and *Pearl Ashes* are annually made. The manufacture of *Porcelain* has been recently commenced in the city of New York.

Owing to the imperfect returns, no very accurate statements can be made of the extent of manufacturing establishments, or the amount of articles manufactured. According to the returns of 1823, the capital engaged in manufactures was about 8,000,000, which must be far below the real amount. There were in 1823 above 10,000 hydraulic machines employed on the streams which flow through the various sections of the state. Of these, 2140 were flouring mills; 184 cotton and woollen factories; 4321 saw mills; 139 oil mills; 993 fulling mills; and 1235 carding machines. There were 184 iron works, 1060 distilleries, and 1227 asheries.

---

v. What is said of manufactures?—Mention the most important articles.

*What amount of capital is invested?*

SEC. VI. *Commerce.* New York has a widely extended commerce, which has of late been greatly augmented by the communications with the northern and western lakes. Its exports are more than those of any other state; and its imports from foreign countries constitute above one-fifth of the entire imports of the United States. The amount of shipping employed, including that on the river and lakes, and exclusive of small craft on the canals, is estimated at three hundred thousand tons.

The most important articles exported, are wheat, pot and pearl ashes, Indian corn, rye, beef, pork, and lumber. A considerable portion of these exports are derived from the western parts of New England, and the eastern part of New Jersey. Since the completion of the western canal, the commerce of a large part of Ohio, Upper Canada, and the country bordering on the great lakes, has been conducted through New York. Large quantities of iron and salt are annually exported for the consumption of the neighboring states. During the year 1827, 30,000 barrels of salt were shipped to the westward, from Buffalo.

SEC. VII. *Canals.* The improvement of the internal navigation of the state, by means of canals and locks, was among the earliest enterprises of its inhabitants. These works were, however, limited in extent, and confined to the improvement of natural streams. The canal and locks at Little Falls, on the Mohawk river, were completed in 1795; and those at Wolf Rift, with the canal connecting the Mohawk with Wood creek and the Oneida lake, in 1797.

---

VI. What is said of the commerce of New York?—What of its exports and imports?—What the amount of shipping?

*Mention the most important articles of export.*

VII. What is said of the improvement of the internal navigation of the state?

Similar works were subsequently constructed on the Seneca river, at Seneca Falls and Waterloo.

In 1810, the public attention began to be directed to more extensive improvements. The works now contemplated, embraced a canal communication between the navigable waters of the Hudson, and the western and northern lakes. The enterprise was undertaken by the state, and a system of energetic measures adopted for its prosecution. The *Erie* and *Champlain Canals*, connecting the waters of those lakes with the Hudson, were commenced in 1817. The Erie canal was completed in 1825, at an expense of about eight millions of dollars, and is one of the most stupendous and magnificent works of the kind ever executed. The Champlain Canal was completed in 1823.

The Erie Canal, extending from Albany to Buffalo, is 40 feet wide on the surface, 28 on the bottom, 4 feet deep, and 362 miles in length, exclusive of side cuts and navigable feeders. The locks, 83 in number, are 15 feet wide between the gates, and 90 feet in length, and are constructed of the most imperishable stone, laid in water cement. The altitude of the water at the termination of the canal at Buffalo is 565 feet above that of the Hudson at Albany. The total of ascent and depression overcome by means of lockage, throughout the whole extent, is 688 feet. A tow-path is constructed on the bank of the canal, which is elevated from 2 to 4 feet above the surface of the water.

The course of the Erie Canal, commencing at the *Albany Basin*, is along the bank of the Hudson to *Watervliet*, where it receives a navigable feeder from the *Mohawk*, constituting the communication with the *Northern* or

---

What canals have been recently constructed?—What waters are connected by them?

*Give a description of the Erie Canal.—Of its course.*

*Champlain Canal.* Thence it proceeds along the bank of the Mohawk, and crosses that river above the *Cahoes Falls*, by an aqueduct 1188 feet in length, supported by 26 piers. It then continues about 12 miles on the north bank, after which it recrosses the Mohawk, 4 miles below *Schenectady*, by an aqueduct 748 feet in length, 25 feet above the water of the river, and supported by 16 piers. Thence it winds along the south bank of the river, through Schenectady and Utica to Rome. At Little Falls, the Erie is connected with the Old Canal, by a stone aqueduct across the Mohawk, 170 feet in length, and supported by three arches. The Utica Level, 69 1-2 miles in length, without a single lock, commences at Frankfort, 9 miles east of Utica, and, proceeding through that village, Whites- town, Rome, Verona, Sullivan, and Manlius, terminates in the town of Salina, and near the village of Syracuse. During this course, it passes the Sauquait, Oriscany, Oneida, Canastota, Chitteningo, and Limestone Creeks, by aqueducts of various extent. It then proceeds through the village of Syracuse, and crosses the Skeneateles Out- let, by a stone aqueduct, supported by 3 arches; and the Owasco Creek, by an aqueduct of 4 arches, to Montezuma; thence through the Cayuga Marshes, the villages of Clyde and Lyons, and, passing Mud Creek, by a stone aqueduct, 90 feet in length, continues through Palmyra, Pittsford, and Rochester, to Lockport. At Pittsford, it crosses the Irondequoit Creek, on a stupendous embankment, 72 feet in height. At Rochester, it crosses the Genesee river, by a stone aqueduct, of superior architecture, 530 feet in length. Between Rochester and Lockport, the canal passes several deep ravines, by aqueducts and embank- ments. At Lockport, is an ascent of 60 feet, overcome by 5 double combined locks, to the Mountain Ridge, through which the canal passes, by a deep excavation, to the Tonewanda Creek. It then enters the creek, and continues along its channel to its mouth, where a dam is erected 4 1-2 feet in height, and proceeds along the shore of the Niagara river and Lake Erie, to its termination at Buffalo.

---

*Mention the most important places through which it passes.*

Connected with the canal, a pier of great length has been constructed in the Niagara river, at Black Rock, for the purpose of forming a harbor at that place, and supplying water for the summit level. The water of Lake Erie continues in the canal to Montezuma. Thence there is an ascent to the Jordan summit, from which the canal descends to the level of Syracuse. It then ascends to the Utica summit, from which is a continuous descent to the Hudson.

The canal debt, in 1826, amounted to \$7,602,000; the receipts of tolls on the canal the same year, to \$750,000; and the revenue from salt, and auction duties, belonging to the canal fund, to \$420,000. The tolls, in 1827, amounted to \$859,000. It is estimated, that the revenues arising from tolls and the canal fund, will, besides paying the interest, extinguish the canal debt in ten years, dating from 1826.

The Champlain Canal, connecting the Erie Canal and Hudson's river with Lake Champlain, is 71 miles in length, and was constructed at an expense of \$875,000. Commencing at the junction in Watervliet, its course is northward across the Mohawk, which it passes by a dam into Waterford, and continues along the west bank of the Hudson to Northumberland, where it enters the river. It continues in the river to Fort Miller, where it is taken out, and carried round the Falls on the east bank, after which it reenters the river, and continues in the channel to Fort Edward. Here it is again taken out on the east bank, and proceeds through Fort Edward and Kingsbury, to Fort Anne Village, where it enters Wood Creek. Thence it continues in the channel of the creek about 6 miles, and is then taken out on the west bank, and proceeds northward 5 1-2 miles, to its termination, at the village of Whitehall. The summit level, between Fort Edward and Fort Anne, has an elevation of 140 feet above the tide water of the Hudson, and 54 above the water of Lake Champlain. It is supplied by a feeder at Fort Edward, from the waters of the Hudson, which are raised 27 feet by a dam across that stream, 900 feet in length.

---

*What can you say of the Champlain Canal?*

Connected with the canal is also a dam across the Hudson, with a sloop lock, at Troy, which cost \$92,270. The canal communicates with these works by a descent of 3 locks into the Mohawk, below the dam on that river, at Waterford. The tolls received on this canal, in 1827, amounted to \$72,833.

The Delaware and Hudson Canal is partly in this state. It commences on the Hudson, at Kingston, and proceeds in a southwest direction, through the valley of the Never-sink Creek to the Delaware river; thence up the valleys of the Delaware river and Lockowaxen creek, to the Mauch Chunk Railway. This canal will be highly important in supplying New York with Coal from the mines in Pennsylvania.

SEC. VIII. *Banks.* There are above forty Banks in this state, possessing a large amount of real, and a still larger amount of nominal capital. In 1811, there were fifteen banks,—the capitals of which amounted to \$11,840,000. Of these, five were in the city of New York,—the capitals of which amounted to \$8,050,000. In 1819, the aggregate capital of thirty of the banks in this state amounted to \$24,000,000.

SEC. IX. *Militia.* The militia comprises, with few exceptions, all the able-bodied white male citizens between the ages of eighteen and forty-five years. The enrolled militia, at this time, amounts to about one hundred and fifty thousand men, and are well organized and provided with arms. Twelve arsenals are located in various sections of the state, and supplied with military stores.

According to the returns of 1823, the enrolled militia, at that time, amounted to 146,709: of these, 132,639 were

---

*What can you say of the Delaware and Hudson Canal?*

**viii.** *What is said of Banks?*

**ix.** *What does the militia comprise?—What number?*

infantry; 8622 artillery; and 5448 cavalry. They were divided into 27 divisions, which were subdivided into 61 brigades, 243 regiments, and 2012 companies. The arsenals are located at New York, Albany, Whitehall, Plattsburgh, Elizabethtown, Malone, Russel, Watertown, Rome, Onondaga, Canandaigua, and Batavia.

SEC. x. *Education and Literary Institutions.* The facilities for education are in no country more extensively enjoyed, or more highly appreciated, than in New York. The "Regents of the University," instituted in 1787, constitute a corporation of twentyone members, to whom is entrusted the care of the literature of the state. It is their duty to visit colleges, academies, and schools, and to superintend the system of education. They meet annually, at Albany, and report to the legislature the state of literary institutions. They are authorized to incorporate colleges and academies, and have the direction and distribution of the funds appropriated to literary institutions.

Six colleges, including those for physicians and surgeons, have been established in this state, and liberally endowed. Columbia College, in the city of New York, Union College, at Schenectady, and Hamilton College, at Paris, Oneida county, are all useful and highly flourishing institutions. The college at Geneva has been recently established. The college of physicians and surgeons, in the city of New York, is surpassed by no institution of the kind

---

*Where are arsenals located?*

x. What is said of education?—Of the Regents of the University?—How many colleges are in this state, and at what places are they located?

in America ; that at Fairfield is highly respectable. There are thirtysix incorporated academies, located in various parts of the state, and about eight thousand common schools. In these seminaries four hundred thousand children and youth are annually educated.

*Columbia College* was founded in 1757 ; and, till the revolution, had the name of King's College. It has a president, 5 professors, a considerable library, and valuable philosophical apparatus. This institution has been richly endowed, and has about 140 students.

*Union College* was incorporated by the Regents of the University in 1794. It has a president and 4 professors, a library of above 5000 volumes, and a complete chemical and philosophical apparatus. The number of students is about 250. The funds of the institution, in 1796, amounted to about \$50,000 ; and, since that period, it has received, besides other grants from the legislature, a grant by lottery of about \$90,000.

*Hamilton College* was incorporated by the Regents of the University in 1812. About \$50,000 were subscribed by individuals, and the same sum granted by the legislature to constitute the funds of the seminary. Since that period, the funds have received an addition of \$50,000 by indirect grants of the legislature. It has 3 professors, 2 tutors, a library of above 2000 volumes, with a good chemical and philosophical apparatus. It is situated in the heart of one of the most populous and flourishing sections of the state, and promises to become, at no very distant period, one of the most important institutions in the country.

The Presbyterians have a *Theological Seminary* at Auburn ; the Baptists, at Hamilton ; and the Episcopal Church, in the city of New York. Of the *Incorporated Academies*, Albany, Cayuga, Clinton, Lansingburgh, Montgomery, Dutchess, Union Hall, Whitesborough, Eras-

---

How many academies ?—Common schools ?

What is said of *Columbia College* ?—Of *Union College* ?—Of *Hamilton College* ?—What *Theological Seminaries* are mentioned, and where located ?—Mention some of the principal academies.

mus Hall, Geneva, Hudson, St Lawrence, Hartwick, Middlebury, Lawville, Oxford, Pompey, Canandaigua, Cambridge, and Ballston, are the most important. There are likewise a large number of *Private Schools* established in various parts of the state, many of which are highly respectable. Above \$6000, the revenue arising from the *Literature Fund*, is annually distributed by the Regents of the University among the incorporated academies, in proportion to the number of classical students. Near \$200,000, derived from the *Common School Fund*, and district or town taxes, are annually appropriated to the support of *Common Schools*.\*

SEC. XI. *Religion.* In New York, the institutions of the *Christian Religion* are very generally regarded. The constitution makes no provision for its support, but secures to every man the free use and enjoyment of religious profession and worship, according to the dictates of his own conscience. The clergy are supported by the voluntary contributions of the people, and are excluded from holding offices under the government. The principal denominations are, General Assembly Presbyterians, Associate Reformed Presbyterians, Dutch Reformed Presbyterians, Episcopalians, Baptists, Methodists, Friends, and Lutherans. Above three thousand churches are occupied by the several denominations for religious worship.

SEC. XII. *Population.* New York contains a population principally descended from Holland, Great Britain, France, and Germany, of

\* In 1823, the sum amounted to \$182,802 25.

---

*What amount is annually appropriated for the support of Common Schools?*

xI. What is said of Religion?—Mention the principal denominations.

xII. What is said of the population of New York?

about 1,800,000. During the early period of its history, the progress of population was retarded by the disadvantages of a location remote from the civilized world, and surrounded by a jealous, savage, and revengeful people. At the close of the first 50 years after its settlement, the European population was only 5000; and, at the close of the first century, about 50,000. In 1756, it amounted to near 100,000; and has since that period increased with astonishing rapidity. In 1800, it was 586,000; in 1810, 959,000; in 1820, 1,372,000; and in 1825, 1,616,000. According to this ratio of increase, the number, in 1830, will amount to 2,000,000.

The *original Indian population* has been rapidly disappearing since the European settlements; and has now become extinct in most parts of the state. About 5000, the remains of the *Confederated Iroquois*, are all that survive of these once populous and powerful tribes. The *Oneidas* reside on the reservation near Utica; the *Senecas* and *Onondagas*, on the Buffalo and Cattaraugus Creek reservations; and their adopted brethren, the *Tuscaroras*, at Lewiston. The *Mohawks* have retired to Upper Canada.

SEC. XIII. *Character.* The people of New York, consisting of emigrants, or the descendants of emigrants, from most of the European

---

What, at an early period, impeded its progress?—What can you say of its increase?—What of the Indian population?—What number survive, and where do they reside?

XIII. What is said of the character of the people?

states, can hardly be said, at this period, to have established a national character. They all retain, in a greater or less degree, the distinguishing characteristics of the particular nation from which they originated. The Dutch, being the earliest settlers, imparted a bias to the others, which is still perceptible, and, probably, will long continue.

New York has furnished her full proportion in the bright catalogue of *American worthies*, and has ever been distinguished for patriotism and attachment to freedom. In the progress of the common and liberal arts, and in developing and improving her natural resources, she has been surpassed by none of the United States. The activity everywhere apparent in her cities and villages, the high state of cultivation, and the neatness and order, exhibited in most sections of the country; above all, the great works of internal improvement, which have been executed, particularly within the last ten years, sufficiently attest the industry and enterprise of her inhabitants.

---

For what have they been distinguished?—What is said in regard to industry and enterprise?

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES.

---

*Sketches of the lives and characters of some distinguished men in the colony and state of New York.*

### GEORGE CLINTON.

*George Clinton* was born in July, 1739, in the precinct of the highlands, in the county of Ulster, now the town of New Windsor, in the county of Orange.

At an early age, he displayed that spirit of enterprise and energy of character, which distinguished his conduct through life. During the French war, he entered on board a privateer, which sailed from the port of New York ; and, after undergoing great dangers and hardships, returned, and accepted the commission of a lieutenant, in a company commanded by his brother James. This company composed part of a regiment commanded by his father ; and which, united with other forces under Col. Bradstreet, captured Fort Frontenac, now Kingston, near the mouth of Lake Ontario. During this expedition, Capt. Clinton's company signalized itself by attacking a French sloop of war, which annoyed the army in its descent down the lake ; and which, after a bloody engagement, was compelled to strike its colors.

After this campaign, he commenced the studies preparatory for the legal profession ; and, in 1764, was admitted to the bar of the supreme court. He established himself in his native county, where he practised with great reputation and success. He had previously filled the office of clerk of Ulster county, to which he was appointed by Gov. Clinton, the father of Sir Henry Clinton.

He was soon after chosen a member of the colonial assembly, after a violent struggle, and a formidable opposition from all the influence of the crown. He immediately

became the head of the whig party in this assembly, where he continued usefully and actively employed until the revolution, on the side of the people, defying the frowns of power, spurning the seductions of corruption and intrigue, and displaying the resources of a powerful intellect, and the energies of undaunted patriotism.

In April, 1775, he was appointed a delegate to the continental congress, and took his seat in that body in May following. In January, 1776, he attended an adjourned meeting, having been continued in office by the provincial convention which assembled in New York in December of the preceding year. In 1776, he was also appointed brigadier general of the militia of Ulster county; and, some time after, a brigadier in the army of the United States.

At the first election under the constitution of the state, he was chosen both governor and lieutenant governor. On his acceptance of the former office, the venerable Pierre Van Cortland was elected to the latter. After having been continued in the office of governor, by six triennial elections, for the term of eighteen years, Mr Clinton declined another election, and published an address to the freeholders of the state, stating, that his respect for the republican principle of rotation in office, would no longer permit him to fill his recent honorable station.

During the revolutionary war, his situation, as chief magistrate of the state of New York, owing to its exposure to the incursions of the enemy, was the most arduous, critical, and important of any office in the new empire, except that of commander in chief of the army. In all the trying exigencies of that protracted conflict, he maintained his well earned reputation for patriotism and intrepidity. The actual, as well as the nominal head of the state militia, he was seen at one period driving the enemy into the forests of the west, at another time meeting him on the frontier and chastising his temerity.

His energy and decision were very remarkable. At the conclusion of the revolutionary war, when violence against the tories was the order of the day, a British officer was placed on a cart, in the city of New York, to be tarred and feathered. This was the signal for violence and assassination. Gov. Clinton, at this moment, deter-

mined in his purpose, rushed in among the mob with a drawn sword, and rescued the victim.

Some years after, a furious assemblage of people collected, called the doctors' mob, and raged through New York, with intentions to kill the physicians of that city, and pull down their houses, for having dug up bodies for dissection. This mob was inconceivably terrible, and, by their violence, intimidated the local magistracy. Gov. Clinton fortunately appeared in person, called out the militia, and restored peace to the city.

After a retirement of five years from public life, Mr Clinton was called by the citizens of New York to represent them in the assembly of the state. In 1801, he was again prevailed upon to accept of a reelection as governor, and after continuing in that office for three years, he was elected Vice President of the United States, in which station he continued until his decease, which took place on the 20th of April, 1812, at the city of Washington.

Gov. Clinton's conduct was amiable in private, as it was dignified in public life. No man felt more powerfully the charities of the love of his family and associates. In all the vicissitudes of an eventful career, he never abandoned a faithful friend. And while he made it a sacred rule to disregard the claims of consanguinity in the dispensation of patronage, his virtuous adherents, who were connected with him by the kindred feelings of patriotism and the sympathies of friendship, never failed to experience the full extent of his liberality.

As a public character, he will live in the veneration of posterity, and the progress of time will thicken the laurels that surround his monument. The characteristic virtues, which distinguished his life, appeared in full splendor in the trying hour of death; and he died as he lived—without fear and without reproach.

---

### JAMES CLINTON.

*James Clinton*, brother to the preceding, was born in Ulster county, August, 1736, and received the advantages of a superior education. The predominant inclination of his mind was for a military life. After having success-

fully held several offices in the militia and provincial troops, he was, in 1763, appointed by Lieut. Gov. Colden captain commandant of the four companies in the pay of the province of New York, raised for the defence of the western frontiers of the counties of Ulster and Orange; and, in 1774, lieutenant colonel of the militia in Ulster county. In the French war of 1756, he was a captain under Col. Bradstreet at the capture of Fort Frontenac, and rendered important service in that expedition, particularly, by the capture of a French sloop of war on Lake Ontario, which impeded the progress of the army.

At the commencement of the revolution in 1775, he was appointed by the continental congress colonel of the 3d regiment of the New York forces. He was the same year appointed, by the provincial congress of New York, colonel of the militia foot in Ulster county; and, in March 1776, by the continental congress, colonel of the 2d battalion of New York troops; and, in August, a brigadier general in the army of the United States. In this station, he continued during the greater part of the war, having the command of the New York line, or the troops of this state, and at its close was constituted a major general. In 1775, his regiment composed part of the army, which invaded Canada under Montgomery; and, in 1777, he commanded at Fort Clinton, which with Fort Montgomery constituted the defence of the Hudson river against the ascent of the enemy. When these forts were stormed by the enemy under Sir Henry Clinton, Gen. James Clinton, with his brother, then governor, made a desperate, but ineffectual resistance. During a considerable part of the war, he was stationed at Albany, where he commanded in the northern department, a place of high responsibility, and requiring uncommon vigilance and constant exertion. He took part in the expedition against the Indians in 1779, and was present at the capture of Cornwallis at Yorktown, where he distinguished himself by his usual intrepidity. His last appearance in arms was on the evacuation of the city of New York, where he bid the commander in chief a final and affectionate farewell, and retired to his estates.

He was, however, frequently called from his retirement by the unsolicited voice of his fellow-citizens. He was

appointed a commissioner to adjust the boundary line between Pennsylvania and New York, and was selected by the legislature for an interesting mission to settle controversies respecting lands in the west. He represented his native county in the assembly, and in the convention that adopted the present constitution of the United States. He was elected, without opposition, a senator from the middle district, and a delegate to the convention of 1801, for the purpose of amending the state constitution, all of which trusts he executed with integrity and ability, and to the perfect satisfaction of his constituents. His temper was mild and affectionate; but when roused by unprovoked insult, or unmerited injury, he exhibited extraordinary energy. He died in December, 1812, in the 76th year of his age, and was interred in the family burial place, at Little Britain, in Orange county.\*

---

### DE WITT CLINTON.

*De Witt Clinton* was born in 1769, at the residence of his father, Gen. James Clinton, New Windsor, Orange Co. in this state, and received his early education at a grammar school in a neighboring village called Stonefield, under the care of the Rev. John Moffat, from which he was transferred at the age of thirteen, to an academy at Kingston, then conducted by Mr John Addison. He remained here until he was prepared to enter the junior class of Columbia college in 1784, and was graduated a Bachelor of Arts, at the first public commencement held in this institution after the close of the revolutionary war, being adjudged worthy to receive the honor of delivering the Latin salutatory address, an honor always conferred on the best classic scholar of the year.

He commenced the study of the law in 1786, with Samuel Jones, Esq., a celebrated counsellor, second to none of his profession for profound and extensive knowledge. Mr Clinton received the usual licences or degrees in the law, but was abruptly called off from the further cultivation of the pursuit, by circumstances arising from the situation of political affairs in the state of New York.

\* Lord.

The germs of the two great parties which have since divided the country, were at that time beginning to appear. His uncle, George Clinton, then governor of the state, was assailed by a combination of almost all the talents of that section of the country ; and pamphlets and newspaper essays were poured upon the public with unrestrained profusion. Mr Clinton, relinquishing every other pursuit, entered warmly and exclusively into the vindication of the conduct and principles of his uncle ; and it is believed that the greater part of the controversial politics on that side, was managed by him during this period of turbulence and irritation. He continued with his uncle, as his secretary, during his administration, which ended in 1795. The governor declined a re-election, not only on account of the ill state of his health, but from his observance also of the republican rule of rotation in office. Mr Clinton had been honored, while with his venerable uncle, with the office of secretary of the University, and of the Board of Fortifications of New York. Upon the retirement of the governor, Mr Clinton also withdrew from public life. But his efforts, as an individual, in rallying and supporting the party of which he might then have been considered the leader, were not for a moment remitted. To do this with effect, however, it seemed necessary that he should be placed in a public station ; and accordingly, 1798 he was elected a member of the assembly of this state from the city of New York, and in 1800 was chosen a senator from the southern district, and a member of the council of appointment. From the senate of this state, by a joint ballot of both branches of the legislature, he was elected to a seat in the senate of the United States, where he took an active interest in the concerns of the country, in relation to the differences then existing with the Spanish authorities at New Orleans. His continuance in that august body, however, was short, as on receiving the appointment of Mayor of New York, in October, 1803, it became necessary that he should resign it, the duties of the two offices being by law incompatible. In the office of Mayor he was continued by annual appointment until March, 1807, when by reason of one of those changes of party which occasionally occur, and are more in appearance than in reality, and not inappropriately designated

by the term *political mirage*, he was superseded and remained out of office eleven months, as he was appointed Mayor again by the council, in February, 1808. His term of office, at this time, was a little more than two years, when another partial party change again removed him, and he remained out of office another term of eleven months! In February, 1811, he was again, and for the third time, appointed Mayor, and he continued in office by yearly appointment until the 20th of March, 1815, a term which included the whole period of the late war. It is worthy of remark that a political change in the state, in 1813, caused an almost entire change in its civil commissions, and in conformity with that rule of proscription which seemed to have assumed as its basis, that so soon as a party were in a minority, every individual belonging to it was disqualified for any official trust, Mr Clinton would have been removed from office; but so great was the measure of confidence which the public reposed in him, that his political opponents petitioned their own friends for his re-appointment in place of his removal, so that the virulence of party was disarmed by a consciousness of his peculiar fitness for the station.

During the last term of his mayoralty, he was elected lieutenant-governor of the state, in the place of the Hon. John Broome, deceased, and he continued to officiate both as President of the Senate and Mayor of the city for two years, viz. from 1811 to 1813. In the spring of 1815 he was again superseded, and deprived of all his public employments except that of canal commissioner. In 1817, Mr Clinton was elected the Governor of the State, and at the expiration of the term for which he was chosen, viz. 1820, he was re-elected and served till the adoption of the new state constitution which took effect from the commencement of the year 1823, and shortened the ordinary term of office by six months. In the autumn 1822, he declined another nomination, and returned to the pursuits of private life, holding only the office of a canal commissioner; from which he was removed in the spring of 1824, by a vote of the legislature, which the people rebuked in a most emphatic manner six months afterwards, by again electing him their Governor, and by the largest majority ever known in this state, in a contest-

ed election; and he continued to exercise the office to the last hour of his valuable life. He died suddenly in the full possession of all his mental vigor on the evening of the 11th of February last, without having been at any time sensible of any premonitory evidence of approaching dissolution.

As a citizen, useful, active, and meritorious, he was second, probably, to no man in the United States.—In the great and growing state and city of which he was a native and resident, no man has stamped his name, his genius, and his services on more monuments of public munificence and private utility.

His mind and cast of thought were of the finest order, partaking less of the Machiavelian than the Roman school, and exhibiting a great portion of innate dignity and the *fortiter in re* than are at all times convenient or advantageous to a candidate for popular suffrage. In every station he distinguished himself by his talents, his integrity, and his despatch of business. His reading was multifarious, indefatigable, well-directed and profitable; for his judgment digested and his memory retained the collected knowledge of every hour, allowed from his numerous avocations for study and reflection.

In religion, he was neither a bigoted sectarian, nor scoffer at the superstitious. Reverencing the great principles and duties of rational piety, he cherished the dictates of devotion in all, and respected the tenets and honest singularities of the most peculiar.—Establishing no exclusive denomination over others, he would tolerate every class of sincere professors, and protect them in a liberal exercise of their ideas of divine worship. His charities have principally kept pace with his ability; his pecuniary aid, and his friendly advice and assistance, were always at the service of indigence, virtue, benevolence, literature, the arts, and public utility. If the circle of his confidential associates was contracted, it was not because he discarded attachments when they ceased to be profitable. In his intercourse with the various classes of his fellow-citizens, to which his universal knowledge of business called him, his suavity of disposition and urbanity of manners banished every idea of fastidious

reserve and austerity of demeanor, and rendered his presence desirable and his co-operation sought for on every humane and laudable occasion.

Mr Clinton's personal appearance was dignified and commanding. His form was large and well proportioned—his height above the middle size—his countenance was highly expressive—his eye uncommonly penetrating—his personal courage never was disputed. His moral character was unsullied. He has been called ambitious, it is true; but the whole course of his life serves to prove that he has devoted his talents to his country. He desired to excel, only that he might benefit mankind. In private life and domestic duties, he was amiable and exemplary—exhibiting the picture of a great man—an elegant and profound scholar and a practical citizen—a man of letters and of the world, and a character of active worth to the present generation, and of solid and permanent advantage to posterity.\*

---

### WILLIAM FLOYD.

*William Floyd* was born on the seventeenth of December, 1734; and was the son of an opulent and respectable landholder, in the county of Suffolk, upon Long Island. His education, though liberal for the times, was chiefly confined to the useful branches of knowledge; and was hardly completed, when he was called upon, by the death of his father, to assume the management of his patrimonial estate. His early life was spent in the circle of an extensive family connexion, which comprised the most respectable families in the county.

He early embarked in the controversy with Great Britain, and was appointed one of the delegates, from New York, to the first continental congress, which met in Philadelphia, in 1774. In that patriotic and venerable assembly, he was associated with men whose names are identified with their country's birth, and will long be cherished in grateful remembrance. He was reelected in 1775, and, in

\* *Delaplaine's Repository.*

1777, was appointed a senator of the state of New York, and took his seat at the first session under the new constitution. He was, by subsequent appointments, continued in high public stations during the greater part of his life. During his long attendance in the councils of the general and state governments, he maintained a high and enviable rank. The frequent and constant proofs of popular favor, which he received for more than fifty years, afford the most flattering commentary upon his public character.

After having enjoyed, for eightyseven years, a life of almost uninterrupted health, he expired on the fourth of August, 1821.

In private life, he was fond of society, but always observed a measured decorum, which repressed familiarity, and chilled every approach of intimacy. He was highly respected in the society in which he lived, and has left to his descendants a name of which they will long be proud.\*

---

### ROBERT FULTON.

*Robert Fulton*, eminent as the inventor of steam-boats, was born in the town of Little Britain, Lancaster county, Pennsylvania, 1765. His parents, who were Irish, were respectable, and gave him a common English education at Lancaster. He early exhibited a superior talent for mechanism and painting, and in his eighteenth year established himself in the latter employment in Philadelphia, and obtained much credit and emolument by his portraits and landscapes. On entering his 22d year he went to England, for the purpose of improving his knowledge of that art, and was received into the family of Mr West, with whom he spent several years, and cultivated a warm friendship. After leaving that family, he employed two years in Devonshire as a painter, and there became acquainted with the duke of Bridgewater, and lord Stanhope, the former famous for his canals, and the latter for his love of the mechanic arts. He soon turned his attention to mechanics, particularly to the improvement of inland

\* Sanderson.

navigation by canals, and the use of steam for the propelling of boats ; and in 1794 obtained patents for a double inclined plane, to be used for transportation, and an instrument to be employed in excavating canals. He at this time professed himself a civil engineer, and published a treatise on canal navigation. He soon after went to France, and obtained a patent from the government for the improvements he had invented. He spent the succeeding seven years in Paris, in the family of Mr Joel Barlow, during which period he made himself acquainted with the French, Italian, and German languages, and soon acquired a knowledge of the high mathematics, physics, chymistry, and perspective. He soon turned his attention to submarine navigation and explosion, and in 1801, under the patronage of the first consul, constructed a plunging boat, and torpedoes, (differing materially from Bushnell's invention, with which he was acquainted,) with which he performed many experiments in the harbor of Brest, demonstrating the practicability of employing subaquatic explosion and navigation for the destruction of vessels. These inventions attracted the attention of the British government, and overtures were made to him by the ministry which induced him to go to London, with the hope that they would avail themselves of his machines ; but a demonstration of their efficacy which he gave the ministry, by blowing up a vessel in their presence, led them to wish to suppress the invention rather than encourage it ; and accordingly they declined patronising him. During this period he also made many efforts to discover a method of successfully using the steam engine for the propelling of boats, and as early as 1793, made such experiments as inspired him with great confidence in its practicability. Robert R. Livingston, Esq. chancellor of New York, and minister of the United States to the French court, on his arrival in France, induced him to renew his attention to this subject, and embarked with him in making experiments for the purpose of satisfying themselves of the possibility of employing steam in navigation. Mr Fulton engaged with intense interest in the trial, and in 1803, constructed a boat on the river Seine, at their joint expense, by which he fully evinced the practicability of pro-

pelling boats by that agent. He immediately resolved to enrich his country with this invaluable discovery, and on returning to New York in 1806, commenced, in conjunction with Mr Livingston, the construction of the first Fulton boat, which was launched in the spring of 1807 from the ship-yard of Charles Browne, New York, and completed in August. This boat, which was called the Clermont, demonstrated on the first experiment, to a host of, at first incredulous, but at length astonished spectators, the correctness of his expectations, and the value of his invention. Between this period and his death he superintended the erection of fourteen other steam vessels, and made great improvements in their construction. He obtained a patent for his inventions in navigation by steam in February, 1809, and another for some improvements in 1811. In the latter year he was appointed by the legislature of New York, one of the commissioners to explore a route for a canal from the great lakes to the Hudson, and engaged with zeal in the promotion of that great work. On the commencement of hostilities between the United States and Great Britain in 1812, he renewed his attention to submarine warfare, and contrived a method of discharging guns under water, for which he obtained a patent. In 1814 he contrived an armed steam ship for the defence of the harbor of New York, and also a submarine vessel, or plunging boat, of such dimensions as to carry 100 men, the plans of which being approved by government he was authorized to construct them at the public expense. But before completing either of those works, he died suddenly, February 24th, 1815. His person was tall, slender, and well formed, his manners graceful and dignified, and his disposition generous. His attainments and inventions bespeak the high superiority of his talents. He was an accomplished painter, was profoundly versed in mechanics, and possessed an invention of great fertility, and which was always directed by an eminent share of good sense. His style as a writer was perspicuous and energetic. To him is to be ascribed the honor of inventing a method of successfully employing the steam engine in navigation, an invention justly considered one of the most important which has been made in modern ages, and by which he

rendered himself both a perpetual and one of the greatest benefactors of mankind. He was not indeed the first who conceived it to be possible; others had believed its practicability, and made many attempts to propel boats by steam, but having neither his genius, his knowledge, nor his perseverance, they were totally unsuccessful. Mr Fulton was familiarly acquainted with many of the most distinguished literary and political characters both of the United States and of Europe, was a director of the American academy of fine arts, and a member of several literary and philosophical societies.\*

---

### ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

*Gen. Alexander Hamilton* was a native of the island of St. Croix, and was born in 1757. His father was the youngest son of an English family, and his mother was an American. At the age of sixteen, he accompanied his mother to New York, and entered a student of Columbia college, in which he continued about three years. While a member of this institution, the first budings of his intellect gave presages of his future eminence.

The contest with Great Britain called forth the first talents on each side, and his juvenile pen asserted the claims of the colonies against very respectable writers. His papers exhibited such evidence of intellect and wisdom, that they were ascribed to Mr Jay, and when the truth was discovered, America saw with astonishment a lad of seventeen in the list of her able advocates.

At the age of eighteen, he entered the American army, as an officer of artillery. It was not long before he attracted the notice of Washington, who in 1777 selected him as an aid, with the rank of lieutenant colonel. His sound understanding, comprehensive views, application, and promptitude, soon gained him the entire confidence of his patron.

By intercourse with Washington, by surveying his plans, observing his consummate prudence, and by a minute

\* Lord.

inspection of the springs of national operations, he became fitted for command. Throughout the campaign, which terminated in the capture of Lord Cornwallis, Col. Hamilton commanded a battalion of light infantry, and signally distinguished himself at the siege of York.

Soon after the capture of Cornwallis, Hamilton, at the age of twentyfive, applied to the study of law. In this profession, he soon rose to distinction. A few years after, more important concerns demanded his talents. He was appointed, in 1787, a member of the federal convention for New York, and assisted in forming the constitution of our country. By his pen, in the papers signed Publius, and by his voice in the convention of New York, he contributed much to its adoption.

Upon the organization of the government in 1789, Washington placed him at the head of the treasury. In the new demands, which were now made upon his talents, the resources of his mind did not fail him. The integrity and ability, with which he conducted the department of finance, effectually relieved the national embarrassments.

When a provisional army was raised in 1798, in consequence of the injuries and demands of France, Washington suspended his acceptance of the command of it, on the condition that Hamilton should be his associate, and the second in command. This arrangement was accordingly made. After the adjustment of our dispute with the French republic, and the discharge of the army, he returned again to his profession in the city of New York, where he passed the remainder of his days.

In June, 1804, Col. Burr, vice president of the United States, addressed a letter to Gen. Hamilton, requiring his acknowledgment or denial of the use of any expression derogatory to the honor of the former. This demand was deemed inadmissible, and a duel was the consequence. The parties met at Hoboken, on the morning of Wednesday, July the 11th, and Hamilton fell on the same spot, where his son, a few years before, had fallen, in obedience to the same principle of honor.

He was carried into the city, where, after expressing his regret for this last act of his life, his penitence, and faith in the Saviour, he received the sacrament of the

communion ; and expired about two o'clock on Thursday July 12, aged fortyseven years.

Gen. Hamilton possessed very uncommon powers of mind. To whatever subject he directed his attention, he was able to grasp it, and in whatever he engaged, in that he excelled. So stupendous were his talents, and so patient was his industry, that no investigation presented difficulties which he could not conquer. In the class of men of intellect, he held the first rank. His eloquence was of the most interesting kind, and when new exertions were required, he rose in new strength, and touching at his pleasure every string of pity or terror, of indignation or grief, he bent the passions of others to his purpose. At the bar, he gained the first eminence.

He undoubtedly discovered the predominance of a soldier's feelings ; and all, that is honor in the character of a soldier, was at home in his heart. His early education was in the camp ; there the first fervors of his genius were poured forth, and his earliest and most cordial friendships formed ; there he became enamored of glory, and was admitted to her embrace.\*

---

### HENRY HUDSON.

*Henry Hudson*, the discoverer of our state, was an eminent English navigator. Of the place of his birth, the manner in which he was educated, and the private circumstances of his life, we have no account. He first made his appearance in 1607 ; and, during the three following years, immortalized his name by a series of the most brilliant discoveries.

Of his most important discoveries, and the manner of his death, some account has already been given. While on a voyage of discovery, a mutiny broke out among his crew, and Hudson was bound, and, with his son John, and seven of the most infirm of his men, put into an open boat, and abandoned to their fate, at the west end of the straits that now bear his name. The crew then proceeded

\* Allen's Biography. Ames's Sketch.

to England: but landing near the mouth of the strait, four of them were killed by the savages. The remainder, after enduring the most severe sufferings, arrived at Plymouth, September, 1611.\*

“The sensation produced in London, upon the disclosure of these tragical events, may be conceived to have been very great. Such indeed was the interest felt in England, that the London company, prompted by the benevolent motive of searching for Hudson and his companions, flattered also by the hope of discovering an unexplored passage at the west side of the bay, fitted out another expedition the following year, which, after wintering, returned, disappointed in both objects of search.”

“Hudson had become deservedly a favorite with a large portion of the British public. The English long regretted the loss of their countryman, whose achievements as a navigator had reflected honor on a nation already distinguished for its illustrious seamen. Hudson’s personal qualities and virtues, displayed during four voyages, at times which were calculated to try character, will ever be contemplated with admiration and pleasure; but to the citizens of the state of New York, the character of this heroic navigator will be peculiarly the theme of eulogium, and his misfortunes the subject of regret.”

“Hudson was not faultless; but no record imputes to his conduct any crime or wilful vice. He had at times that irritability of passion, which is so peculiarly the trait of those whose lives are passed upon the ocean. But few, who have so conflicted with its dangers, and at the same time combatted the turbulent dispositions of mutinous crews, could have preserved presence of mind, exercised moderation, and displayed magnanimity in a more exalted manner, than Hudson. His faults, whatever they were, are eclipsed by the splendor of his virtues. When the river, which he discovered, shall display upon its banks, in a range of three hundred miles, a free, vigorous, and intelligent population, crowded into numerous additional cities, villages, seats, and farm houses, the merits of Hudson will be reiterated with increased praise, while his name shall be handed down from generation to generation.”†

\* Allen.

† Yates and Moulton.

## FRANCIS LEWIS.

*Francis Lewis* was born in March, 1713, at Landaff, in the shire of Glamorgan, South Wales, where his father was established as a protestant episcopal clergyman. After completing a classical education at Westminster school, he served a regular clerkship with a merchant in London ; and, at the age of twentyone, embarked, with a large amount of merchandise, to establish himself in mercantile business in the city of New York.

In commercial and mercantile pursuits, Mr Lewis displayed much enterprise and activity ; and, during the French war, rendered important services to the country. He was an active and distinguished member of the colonial assembly of 1765. In 1775, he was unanimously elected delegate to the colonial congress, and was one of the first to enrol his name among the "sons of liberty," in the declaration of 1776. In 1777, he received the formal thanks of the state convention ; and, the two following years, was appointed to a seat in the general congress. In December, 1803, this venerable man, and excellent citizen, was gathered to his fathers, bequeathing to his posterity a name, which will long flourish in the annals of liberty, affording a bright example of virtue and integrity.\*

## PHILIP LIVINGSTON.

*Philip Livingston* was born at Albany, in January, 1716. He was educated at Yale College, in Connecticut, where he graduated in 1737. He then directed his attention to commercial pursuits ; and, by his integrity, sagacity, and comprehensive views, laid the foundation, and erected the superstructure of extraordinary prosperity.

He commenced his career in public life in 1754, as an alderman of the east ward of the city of New York ; and, in 1759, was returned by the freeholders of this city as a member of the assembly. In this body, he soon became conspicuous for his talents and devotedness to the interests

\* Waln.

of the people. In 1769, he declined an election for New York, and was returned a member of the house for the manor of Livingston. His liberal views, and powerful exertions in defending the rights of the citizens, soon after, rendered him obnoxious to the governor; and, as a majority of the assembly were now under the influence of the crown, his seat in the house was vacated, by a vote of that body, on the plea of nonresidence.

Mr Livingston was chosen a member of the first congress, which met at Philadelphia, 1774. He was, the following year, appointed president of the provincial congress, assembled at New York. In 1776, in conjunction with his colleagues, he affixed his signature to the Declaration of Independence, in behalf of the state of New York.

During the recesses of the general congress, he rendered important services in the organization of the state government. In May, 1778, he took his seat in congress for the last time. Although feeble in body, and low in health, he consented to forego all considerations but those of patriotism; and, at a distance from his family, willingly devoted to his country the last hours of his life. He expired on the 12th of June, at the age of sixtytwo years.

---

### WILLIAM LIVINGSTON.

*William Livingston*, LL. D. governor of New Jersey, was born in the city of New York, about the year 1723, and was graduated at Yale College, in 1741. He studied law, and possessing an understanding of great energy, a brilliant imagination, and a retentive memory, and devoting himself assiduously to the cultivation of his mind, he soon rose to distinction in the profession. He early exhibited himself an able and zealous advocate of civil and religious liberty, and employed his pen in vindicating the rights of the colonies against the arbitrary claims of the British. After enjoying several important offices in New York he removed to New Jersey, and as a representative of that state was one of the most distinguished of the congress of 1774. On the formation of a new constitution for that state in 1776 he was appointed the first governor, and was annually reelected to the office till his death in 1790. He was characterized by simplicity in his man-

ners, and ease, amiableness, and wit in his social intercourse. His writings display uncommon vigor, keenness, and refinement, and are often eloquent. He devoted himself, during the revolution, ardently to the cause of his country, and did much by the shrewdness and severity of his writings both to encourage his countrymen and exasperate the British.\*

---

### ROBERT R. LIVINGSTON.

*Robert R. Livingston*, chancellor of New York, and minister of the United States to France, was born in the city of New York, September 2d, 1747, and educated at King's College, where he was graduated in 1765. He studied law, and commenced its practice in New York, but was soon after appointed recorder of that city, and held the office till near the commencement of the revolution, when he was dismissed by governor Tryon, on account of his attachment to liberty. Mr Livingston boldly advocated the cause of his country at that crisis, was elected to a seat in the first congress, and was one of its ablest and most influential members. He was one of the committee which drew up the declaration of independence, and on the establishment of the executive departments in 1780 was appointed secretary of foreign affairs, and held the place till 1783. He was chosen in 1777 a member of the convention which formed the constitution of New York, and on its adoption was appointed chancellor of the state, and continued in that office till he went to France in 1801. It was in that capacity that he administered the oath of office to president Washington on his first inauguration. In 1788 he was a member of the convention of New York, which assembled to consider the constitution of the United States, and was a principal instrument in procuring its adoption. He was appointed minister to France in 1801, and rendered the most important services to his country while residing there, by negotiating the purchase of Louisiana, and procuring redress for the numerous spoliations by the French on the commerce of the

\* This article and the two following were taken with some immaterial alterations from Lord's Dictionary.

United States. He returned to the United States in 1805, and though not afterwards employed in public life, continued to be eminently useful, by promoting the progress of the arts and agriculture. He was a principal founder and the president of the New York Academy of Fine Arts, and also of the Society for the promotion of agriculture. He died in Christian hope on the 15th of February, 1813, in his sixtyseventh year, lamented as one of the most distinguished among his countrymen in talents, learning, public spirit, and usefulness. He possessed an active and vigorous mind, uncommon quickness of perception, was a profound lawyer and statesman, and ranked among the first Americans in eloquence.

---

### BROCKHOLST LIVINGSTON.

*Brockholst Livingston*, judge of the supreme court of the United States, was the son of William Livingston, governor of New Jersey, and was born in the city of New York, November 25th, 1757. He entered Princeton college, but in 1776 left it for the field, and became one of the family of general Schuyler, commander of the northern army. He was afterwards attached to the suite of general Arnold, with the rank of major, and shared in the honors of the conquest of Burgoyne. In 1779 he accompanied Mr Jay to the court of Spain as his private secretary, and remained abroad about three years. On his return he devoted himself to law, and was admitted to practise in April, 1783. His talents were happily adapted to the profession, and soon raised him into notice, and ultimately to eminence. He was called to the bench of the supreme court of the state of New York, January 8th, 1802, and in November, 1806, was transferred to that of the supreme court of the United States, the duties of which station he discharged with distinguished faithfulness and ability until his death, which took place during the sittings of the court at Washington, March 18th, 1823, in the 66th year of his age. He possessed a mind of uncommon acuteness and energy, and enjoyed the reputation of an accomplished scholar, an able pleader and jurist, an upright judge, and a liberal patron of learning.

## RICHARD MONTGOMERY.

*Richard Montgomery*, a major general in the army of the United States, was born in the north of Ireland, in 1737. He possessed an excellent genius, which was matured by a fine education. Entering the army of Great Britain, he successfully fought her battles, with Wolfe, at Quebec, in 1759 ; and on the very spot where he was, afterwards, doomed to fall, when fighting against her, under the banners of freedom.

He early imbibed an attachment to America ; and, after his arrival in New York, purchased an estate, about one hundred miles from the city, and married a daughter of Judge Livingston. When the struggle with Great Britain commenced, as he was known to have an ardent attachment to liberty, and had expressed his readiness to draw his sword on the side of the colonies, the command of the continental forces, in the northern department, was entrusted to him and Gen. Schuyler, in the fall of 1775.

By the indisposition of Schuyler, the chief command devolved upon him in October. After a succession of splendid and important victories, he appeared before Quebec. In an attempt to storm the city, on the last of December, this brave commander fell, by a discharge of grape shot, both of his aids being killed at the same time. In his fall, there was every circumstance united, that could impart fame and glory to the death of a soldier. His exit was deeply lamented, both in Europe and America. The American congress celebrated his funeral obsequies, and ordered a monument to be erected to his memory.

---

## LEWIS MORRIS.

*Lewis Morris* was born at *Morrisania*, West Chester county, in the year 1726. He was educated at Yale College, where he graduated in 1746. He then returned to his paternal estate, and devoted his attention to the theory and practice of agriculture. His illustrious descent and connexions, his large possessions, and, above all, his pa-

triotism and attachment to freedom, rendered him a conspicuous member of the community ; and, in 1775, he was appointed a delegate to the general congress.

Mr Morris was, very early, a determined advocate for independence, and affixed his signature to the celebrated declaration of 1776. His beautiful and valuable estate was soon after in the power of the enemy, and given up to plunder and conflagration. He relinquished his seat in congress, in 1777, to his brother, on which occasion the convention passed a resolution of thanks to him and his colleagues, "for their long and faithful services, rendered to the colony and state of New York."

He was afterwards an important and highly valued member of the legislature, and an officer of the militia. As an officer, he contributed essentially to the effective organization and equipment of the militia of New York.

He died in January, 1798, in the seventysecond year of his age ; and his remains were interred, with military and civic honors, in the family vault at Morrisania.\*

---

## GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.

*Gouverneur Morris*, an eminent political character, was a descendant from the distinguished family of that name of Morrisania. He was born in 1751, and graduated at the college in New York, in 1768. He was called into public life at an early age, being elected a member of the provincial legislature of New York in 1775. In 1777 he was a member of the convention which formed the constitution of that state, and was appointed one of the delegates to congress. He was a decided friend of independence, and when the overtures for reconciliation were made known to congress by the British commissioners, in 1778, their rejection was advocated with great force of argument and poignancy of wit by Mr Morris and William Henry Drayton. Residing afterwards in Pennsylvania, he was a delegate from that state to the convention which framed the constitution of the United States. He was one of the committee who revised the draught, and to whom it was

\* Sanderson.

indebted for the beauty and perspicuity of its style. In 1792 he was appointed minister plenipotentiary to France. In that period of enthusiasm, an ardent attachment to the principles, and a cordial sympathy with the friends of the revolution was esteemed an indispensable qualification in the minister of the United States. But although a decided republican, he had too much wisdom not to doubt the ultimate utility of some of the measures then pursuing in that kingdom, or to participate in the sanguine anticipations of the leaders who directed them. In consequence, although his conduct was marked by the utmost prudence and urbanity, he failed to secure the confidence of the Directory, and when a request was made for the recall of Mr Genet, by the American government, it was met by a similar one from that of France, in relation to Mr Morris, who returned to the United States in 1794. In 1797, he was elected a senator from the state of New York, in congress. He was a leading member of the federal party, and exercised a degree of influence which few other men possessed. His powers of eloquence were of the highest order. In the celebrated debate on the subject of abolishing the judiciary system, in 1802, he took an active part in conjunction with Mr Bayard and other distinguished statesmen, in opposition to that measure, and his speeches on that occasion were among the most powerful and impressive which have been known in the annals of American legislation. After his term as a senator expired, he retired to private life, to the enjoyment of an ample fortune, and the indulgence of a liberal hospitality. He married in 1809, a daughter of Thomas Randolph of Virginia, and died at his seat at Westchester, November 6th, 1816, aged 65. In addition to his speeches in congress, several of his orations on various occasions were published. Among these the most celebrated were, one delivered before the corporation of New York, 1800, occasioned by the death of Washington ; and another delivered before an assembly of citizens convened to celebrate the downfall of the Emperor, and the restoration of the Bourbons to the throne of France. He also published an Oration before the New York Historical Society in 1816.\*

\* Lord.

## PETER SCHUYLER.

*Peter Schuyler*, mayor of Albany, was distinguished for patriotism, and, by means of his popularity with the Indians, rendered important services to the *Colony* of New York, in securing their friendship and assistance during the wars with the French. In 1691, with a party of English and Mohawks, he attacked the French at the north end of Lake Champlain, and defeated them. He had great influence with the five Indian nations, and, in 1710, went to England with five of their chiefs, for the purpose of exciting the government to expel the French from Canada. In 1719, he, being the oldest member of the council, held the chief command in the colony.—During his short administration, the public affairs were conducted with prudence and integrity.

---

## PHILIP SCHUYLER.

*Philip Schuyler*, a major general in the revolutionary war, was born in 1731. He received his appointment from Congress in June, 1775, and was directed to proceed to Ticonderoga, and make preparations for entering Canada. Being taken sick in September, the command devolved upon Montgomery. On his recovery, he devoted himself zealously to the management of affairs in the northern department. On the approach of Burgoyne, in 1777, he made every exertion to obstruct his progress, but the evacuation of Ticonderoga by St Clair, occasioning unreasonable jealousies in regard to Schuyler in New England, he was superseded by Gates, in August, and had the mortification to be recalled, when he was about to take ground, and face the enemy.

He afterwards, though not in the regular service, rendered important services to his country in the military transactions of this State. He was a member of the old congress, and appointed a senator under the new federal constitution. He was again appointed senator in the place of Aaron Burr in 1797. He died at Albany in November, 1804, in the seventythird year of his age.

He was distinguished by strength of intellect, and

upright intentions, and was wise in the contrivance, and enterprising, and persevering, in the execution of plans of public utility. In private life, he was dignified, but courteous, a pleasing, and instructive companion, affectionate in his domestic relations, and just in his intercourse with mankind.\*

---

*List of the Governors and Lieutenant Governors of the Colony and State of New York, with the time of their appointment.*

---

DUTCH GOVERNORS.

Peter Minuit,	A. D. 1625.
Wouter Van Twiller,	1633.
William Kieft,	1638.
Peter Stuyvesant,	1647.

ENGLISH GOVERNORS.

Richard Nichols,	1664.
Francis Lovelace,	1667.
Anthony Colve, governor during the temporary possession of the Dutch,	1673.
Edward Andros,	1674.
Thomas Dongan,	1682.
Francis Nicholson, Lieut.	1688.
Jacob Leisler,	1689.
Henry Sloughter,	1691.
Richard Ingolsby, President,	1692.
Benjamin Fletcher, Gov.	1692.
Richard Earl of Bellomont,	1698.
John Nanfan, Lieut. <i>acted</i> ,	1701.
Lord Cornbury <i>arrived</i> ,	1702.
John, Lord Lovelace, baron of Husley,	1708.

\* Allen.

Richard Ingolsby, Lieut. <i>acted</i> ,	1709.
Gerandus Beekman, President,	1710.
Robert Hunter, Gov.	1710.
Peter Schuyler, President,	1719.
William Burnet, Gov.	1720.
James Montgomery,	1728.
Rip Van Dam, President,	1731.
William Crosby, Gov.	1732.
George Clarke, President,	1736.
Mr Clarke soon after appointed Lieut.	
Gov.	1736.
George Clinton,	1743.
Danvers Osborn,	1753.
James De Lancey, Lieut. Gov.	1753.
Sir Charles Hardy, Gov.	1755.
James De Lancey, Lieut. Gov.	1757.
Cadwallader Colden, President,	1760.
Mr Colden appointed Lieut. Gov.	1761.
Robert Monekton, Gov.	1762.
Mr Colden, Lieut. Gov.	1763.
Henry Moore, Gov.	1765.
Mr Colden, Lieut. Gov.	1769.
John Earl of Dunmore, Gov.	1770.
William Tryon, Gov.	1771.
Mr Colden, Lieut. Gov. <i>acted</i> ,	1771.
William Tryon, Gov.	1775.

## STATE GOVERNORS.

George Clinton,	1777.
John Jay,	1795.
George Clinton,	1801.
Morgan Lewis,	1804.
Daniel D. Tompkins,	1807.
De Witt Clinton,	1817.

22

ERRATA.—Page 6, first line, for *unbroken*, read *broken*. Page 19, third line, for *increase of animals*, read *productions of animal life*. Page 21, eighteenth line, after *peculiarly*, insert *fitted*. Page 54, third line from bottom, for *submitted*, read *acceded*.

LRB Ja '30

22







LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 107 257 2